

Historia Brittonum
The History of the Britons
A Latin Reader

Compiled by Aaron Decker

*Hic liber est dēdicātus discipulīs meīs
in classe Latīnae III
in annō scholasticō 2025-2026.*

Copyright ©2025 Aaron Decker
All Rights Reserved
ISBN: 9798290341934
Imprint: Independently published
decker49@gmail.com

Intrōductiō

This is a Latin reader edition of the *Historia Brittōnum*, often attributed to Nennius, a Welsh monk in the ninth century. It was written around 831 AD and contains interesting accounts of kings and saints and marvels found in the British Isles.

This reader edition was produced to meet the following goals:

- to make an inexpensive print copy of the *Historia Brittōnum* publicly available.
- to provide a legible (not photo-copied) text with macrons.
- to provide glossaries so that a Latin learner could read through this work without needing to consult additional books or dictionaries.
- to provide footnotes glossing the more difficult or unclear sentences and to provide additional commentary.

Approximate statistics regarding the text:

1823 unique lexical forms, 9139 words total.
Average sentence length: 18.4 words.

This reader edition of the *Historia Brittōnum* is not a critical edition of the text; for that, please consult Mommsen's work which is cited in the bibliography. Additionally, I am not an expert on the Welsh language or British history; therefore I apologize in advance for anything I may have overlooked in the identification of place-names. Furthermore, the numbers and calculations contained in the text often have many textual variants presented in Mommsen's critical text. This will not be of concern to most readers, but those who want precision in the dates should consult Mommsen's text. The glosses provided in the footnotes are intentionally woodenly literal; their purpose is to aid the reader in understanding the Latin, not to provide an idiomatic English translation.

The *Historia Brittōnum* appears from its form to be a compilation of other sources. Additionally, some facts related (such as a Pope named Eucharistus in section 21) are not corroborated by any other source and are likely in error or have missing context.

An additional source cited in the footnotes and glossaries is *Nennius Interpretātus*. This is a modern translation into Latin of a medieval Irish-language version of the *Historia Brittōnum*, and can also be found in Mommsen's text. This provides additional insight into how a medieval reader interpreted the text.

Fīnis intrōductiōnis. Incipit textus Historiae Brittōnum.

I. Dē Sex Aetātibus Mundī

1 Ā prīncipiō mundī usque ad dīluvium anni 2,042.

Ā dīluviō usque ad Abraham anni 942.

Ab Abraham usque ad Moysēn anni 640.

Ā Moyse usque ad Dāvīd anni 500.

2 Ā Dāvīd usque Nabuchodonosor anni sunt 569.

Ab Adam usque trāsmigrātiōnem Babylōniae anni sunt 4,879.

3 Ā trāsmigrātiōne Babylōniae usque ad Chrīstum 566.

Ab Adam vērō usque ad passiōnem Chrīstī anni sunt 5,228.

4 Ā passiōne autem Chrīstī perāctī sunt anni 796.

Ab incarnātiōne autem eius anni sunt 831¹.

5 Prīma igitur aetās mundī ab Adam usque ad Noe.

Secunda ā Noe usque ad Abraham.

Tertia ab Abraham usque ad Dāvīd.

6 Quārta ā Dāvīd usque ad Daniēlem.

Quīnta ā Daniēle usque ad Iōhannem Baptistam.

Sexta ā Iōhanne usque ad iūdiciū, in quō dominus noster Iēsus Chrīstus veniet iūdicāre vīvōs ac mortuōs et saeculum per ignem.

¹From His incarnation therefore are 831 years. This conveniently dates this text as having been composed in 831 AD.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 Abraham: Abraham, the Old Testament patriarch
 ac: and
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Adam: Adam, the first man
 aetās: age; singular feminine nominative from aetās, aetātis
 aetātibus: ages; plural feminine ablative from aetās, aetātis
 anni: year; singular masculine genitive from annus, anni
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Babylōnia: Babylon; singular feminine genitive from Babylōnia,
 Babylōniae
 Baptistam: baptist; singular masculine accusative from baptista,
 baptistae
 Christī: of Christ; singular masculine genitive from Christus,
 Christī
 Christum: Christ; singular masculine accusative from Christus,
 Christī
 Christus: Christ; singular masculine nominative from Christus,
 Christī
 Dāniēle: Daniel; singular masculine ablative from Dāniēl,
 Dāniēlis
 Dāniēlem: Daniel; singular masculine accusative from Dāniēl,
 Dāniēlis
 David: David, the king of Israel that slew Goliath.
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 diluviō: flood, destruction; singular neuter ablative from
 diluvium, diluvii
 diluvium: flood, destruction; singular neuter nominative from
 diluvium, diluvii
 dominus: lord, master; singular masculine nominative from
 dominus, dominī
 eius: his/her/its
 et: and
 Iēsūs: Jesus; singular masculine nominative from Jēsūs, Jēsū
 igitur: therefore
 ignem: fire; singular masculine accusative from ignis, ignis
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 incarnātiōne: incarnation; singular feminine ablative from
 incarnātiō, incarnātiōnis
 Iohanne: John the Baptist
 Iohannem: John the Baptist (accusative)
 iūdicāre: to judge; present active infinitive from iūdicō, iūdicāre,
 iūdicāvī, iūdicātus
 iūdicium: judgement; plural masculine genitive from iūdex,
 iūdicis
 mortuōs: dead; plural masculine accusative from mortuus,
 mortua, mortuum
 Moysē: Moses; singular masculine vocative from Moyses,
 Moysis
 Moysen: Moses; singular masculine accusative from Moyses,
 Moysis
 mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundī
 Nabuchodonosor: Nebuchadnezzar (reigned 605-562 BC), the
 Babylonian king mentioned in Daniel
 Noe: Noah, who repopulated the earth after the Flood
 noster: our; singular masculine nominative from noster, nostra,
 nostrum
 passiōne: suffering, passion; singular feminine ablative from
 passiō, passiōnis
 passiōnem: suffering, passion; singular feminine accusative
 from passiō, passiōnis
 per: through
 perāctū: perācti sunt = they were carried through; plural
 masculine nominative perfect passive participle from
 peragō, peragere, peregrī, peractus
 prīma: first; singular feminine nominative from prīmus, prīma,
 prīmum
 prīncipiō: beginning, origin; singular neuter dative from
 principium, principiū
 quarta: fourth; singular feminine nominative from quattuor,
 quartus -a -um, quaterni -ae -a, -
 quīnta: fifth
 quō: which; singular ablative of quis
 saeculum: world, age, generation; singular neuter nominative
 from saeculum, saeculi
 secunda: second; singular feminine nominative from duo -ae o,
 secundus -a -um, bīni -ae -a, bis
 sex: six
 sexta: sixth
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 tertia: third; singular feminine nominative from trēs -es -ia,
 tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 trānsmigrātiōne: transmigration; singular feminine ablative
 from trānsmigrātiō, trānsmigrātiōnis
 trānsmigrātiōnem: transmigration; singular feminine accusative
 from trānsmigrātiō, trānsmigrātiōnis
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until

veniet: he will come; 3rd person singular future active from
 veniō, venire, vēni, ventus
 vērō: truly, even so, still
 vīvōs: those alive; plural masculine accusative from vīvus, vīva,
 vīvum

II. Historia Brittōnum

7 Brittannia īnsula ā quōdam Brūtō cōnsule Rōmānō dicta¹. Haec cōnsurgit² ab āfricō boreālī ad occidentem versus: 800 in longitūdine milium, 200 in lātitūdine spatium habet. In eā sunt vīgintī octo cīvitātēs et innumerābilia prōmontoria cum innumerī castellīs ex lapidibus et latere fabricātīs et in eā habitant quattuor gentēs: Scottī, Pictī, Saxonēs, atque Brittōnēs.

8 Trēs magnās īnsulās habet, quārum ūna vergit contrā Armoriācās et vocātur īnsula Gueith: secunda sita est in umbilīcō maris inter Hiberniam et Brittanniam et vocātur nōmen eius Euboniā, id est Manau: alia sita est in extrēmō līmite orbis Brittanniae ultrā Pictōs et vocātur Orc. Sīc in prōverbiō antiquō dīcitur, quandō³ dē iūdicibus vel rēgibus sermō fit: 'iūdicāvit Brittanniam cum tribus īnsulīs'.

¹*The island Britain is named after a certain Roman consul (named) Brutus.*

²*This (the island) rises up from the southwest to the west and to the north (most point) has 800 miles of height and 200 miles of width. Āfricō derives its meaning from the southwest wind that blows off the coast of Africa. The distances given correspond well with what is observed on a modern map.*

³*When it is said of judges or kings: 'he ruled Britain (along) with the three islands'.*

ā: from, out of, by, since	occidentis
ab: from, out of, by, since	octō: 8; from octo, octavus -a -um, octoni -ae -a, octie (n)s
ad: to, towards, at, according to	orbis: realm, orbit; singular masculine genitive from orbis, orbis
āfrīco: southwest; singular masculine ablative from āfricus, āfrīci	Orc: The Orkney Isles, located off the northern coast of Scotland
alīa: other; singular feminine nominative from alius, alia, aliud	Picti: Picts, a Scottish tribe; plural masculine nominative
antiquō: ancient; singular masculine ablative from antiquus, antiqua -um, antiquior -or -us, antiquissimus -a -um	Pictōs: Picts, a Scottish tribe; plural masculine accusative
Armoriācās: The Amoriacas, a region of northern Gaul that includes the Brittany Peninsula	prōmontorīa: promontories, peaks, headlands, capes; plural neuter nominative from promontorium, promontorī
atque: and	prōverbīo: proverb; singular neuter ablative from proverbium, proverbīi
borealī: north, northern; singular ablative or dative from boreālis, boreālis, boreāle	quādō: when, because
Brittānnīa: Britain	quārum: what; plural female genitive from qui
Brittānnīaē: Britain (nominative plural or genitive singular case)	quāttuor: 4
Brittānnīam: Britain (accusative case)	quōdām: by a certain; singular masculine ablative from quidam
Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from Brittō, Brittōnis	rēgībus: kings; plural masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
Brūtō: Brutus; singular masculine ablative from Brūtus, Brūti	Rōmānō: Roman; singular masculine ablative from Rōmānūs, Rōmānā, Rōmānum
castellī: castles, strongholds; plural neuter ablative from castellum, castellī	Saxonēs: The Saxons
cīvītātēs: cities; plural feminine nominative from cīvītās, cīvītātis	secunda: second; singular feminine nominative from duo -ae o, secundus -a -um, bīnī -ae -a, bis
cōnsulē: consul; singular masculine ablative from cōnsul, cōnsulis	sermō: discussion, conversation, speech; singular masculine nominative from sermō, sermonis
cōnsurgit: it rises up; 3rd person singular present active from cōnsurgō, cōnsurgere, cōnsurrēxi, cōnsurrēctus	sīc: thus
contrā: against, away from, facing	sita: sita est = is located; idiomatic usage of past passive participle of sīnō, sinere, sīvī, situs
cum: with	spatiū: space; singular neuter nominative from spatium, spatī
dē: of, from, away from, down from	sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus
dīcīt: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from dīcō, dīcere, dīxi, dīctus	trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
dictā: having been said; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from dīcō, dīcere, dīxi, dīctus	tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
eā: it; singular feminine ablative from is, ea, id	ultrā: beyond
eiūs: his/her/its	umbilicō: center, middle; singular masculine ablative from umbilicus, umbilicī
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	ūna: one; singular feminine nominative from ūnus -a -um, primus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
et: and	vel: or
Euboniā: The Isle of Man, an island between Great Britain and Ireland.	vergit: it lies
ex: out of, from	versus: towards, facing (adverb)
extrēmō: limit, outside, end; singular masculine ablative from extremus, extremi	vīgīntī: 20
fabrīcātīs: having been made; plural ablative past passive participle from fabrīcō, fabrīcāre, fabrīcāvī, fabrīcātūs	vocātūr: to be called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocārē, vocāvī, vocātūs
fit: is made; 3rd person singular present active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	
gentēs: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine nominative from gēns, gentis	
Gueith: The Isle of Wight, an island just off the southern coast of Great Britain in the English channel. The name Gueith is from Old Welsh.	
habet: he has; 3rd person singular present active from habeō, habēre, habūi, habitus	
habitant: they inhabit; 3rd person plural present active from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātūs	
haec: this; these; singular feminine nominative or plural neuter nom. or acc. of hic, haec, hoc	
Hibernīam: Ireland; singular feminine accusative from Hibernia, Hiberniae	
id: it	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
innumerābilia: countless; plural neuter nominative from innumerābilis, innumerābilis, innumerābile	
innumerīs: countless; plural ablative from innumerus, innumera, innumerum	
īnsula: island; singular feminine nominative from īnsula, īnsulæ	
īnsulās: islands; plural feminine accusative from īnsula, īnsulæ	
īnsulīs: islands; plural feminine ablative from īnsula, īnsulæ	
inter: between, among, during	
iūdicāvit: he judged, he ruled; 3rd person singular perfect active from iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātūm	
iūdicibus: judges; plural masculine ablative from iūdex, iūdicis	
lapidibus: stones; plural masculine ablative from lapis, lapidis	
latere: brick; singular masculine ablative from later, lateris	
lātitūdīne: breadth, width, latitude; singular feminine ablative from lātitūdō, lātitūdinis	
limite: limit; singular masculine ablative from limes, limitis	
longitūdīne: length, longitude; singular feminine ablative from longitūdō, longitūdinis	
māgnās: large; plural feminine accusative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um	
Manau: The Isle of Man, an island between Great Britain and Ireland.	
marīs: sea; singular neuter genitive from mare, maris	
milīum: of miles; plural neuter genitive mīlle, mīlle	
nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis	
occidentem: west; singular masculine accusative from occidēns,	

9 Sunt in eā multa flūmina, quae cōnfluunt ad omnēs partēs, id est ad orientem, ad occidentem, ad merīdiem, ad septentriōnem, sed tamen duo flūmina p̄aeclāriōra¹ cēterīs flūminibus Tamesis ac Sabrīnae quasi duo brachia Britanniae, per quae ōlim ratēs vehēbantur ad portandās dīvitiās prō causā negōtiātiōnis. Brittōnēs ōlim implentēs² eam ā marī usque ad mare iūdicāvērunt.

10 Sī quis scīre voluerit, quō tempore post dīluvium habitāta est haec īnsula, hoc experīmentum³ bifāriē invēnī.

In annālibus autem Rōmānōrum sīc scriptum est. Aenēās post Troiānum bellum cum Ascaniō filiō suō vēnit ad ītaliā et superātō Turnō accēpit Lāvīniam filiam Latīnī filiī Faunī, filiī Pīcī, filiī Sāturnī in coniugium et post mortem Latīnī rēgnūm obtinuit Rōmānōrum vel Latīnōrum. Aenēās autem Albam condidit et posteā uxōrem dūxit et peperit eī filium nōmine Silvium.

¹But however two rivers (are) more famous than the other rivers, the Thames and the Severn, like two arms of Britain, through which once rafts were sailed to carry riches for the reason of (conducting) business.

²The Britons ruled once upon a time, filling her (Britain) from sea to sea.

³This can be found (or explained) in two ways.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ac: and
 accēpit: he received, he grasped; 3rd person singular perfect active from accipīō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Aeneas: Aeneas, Trojan prince and legendary founder of Alba Longa, birthplace of Romulus and Remus
 Albam: Alba Longa, a city founded by Aeneas (accusative case)
 annālibus: annals, chronicles; plural masculine ablative from annālis, annālis
 Ascaniō: Ascanius, legendary king of Alba Longa, son of Aeneas (ablative case)
 autem: but, however, moreover
 bellum: battle, war; singular neuter accusative from bellum, belli
 bifāriē: in two ways, variant spelling of bifāriam
 brachia: forearms, branches; plural neuter nominative from brachium, brachii
 Britanniae: Britain; singular feminine genitive from Britannia, Britanniae
 Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from Brittō, Brittōnis
 causa: cause, reason; singular feminine nominative from causa, causae
 cēteris: the others; plural dative from cēterus, cētera, cēterum
 clāriōra: clearer; plural neuter nominative from clārus, clāra
 -um, clārior or -us, clārissimus -a -um
 condidit: he founded, he built; 3rd person singular perfect active from condō, condere, condidi, conditus
 cōfluunt: they flow together; 3rd person plural present active from cōfluō, cōfluere, cōflūxi, cōfluxus
 coniugium: marriage; plural neuter accusative from coniugium, coniugii
 cum: with
 diluvium: flood, specifically Noah's flood; singular neuter accusative from diluvium, diluvii
 dīvitiās: riches, wealth; plural feminine accusative from dīvitia, dīvitiae
 duo: two
 dūxit: he lead; infinitive
 eā: in it; singular feminine ablative from is, ea, id
 eam: it; singular feminine accusative from is, ea, id
 eī: to him, her, or it; singular dative from is, ea, id
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 experīmentum: experience; singular neuter accusative from experīmentum, experīmentū
 Fauni: king of the Latins, father of Latinus; singular masculine genitive from Faunus, Fauni
 filiam: daughter; singular feminine accusative from filia, filiae
 filiū: sons; singular masculine genitive from filius, fili
 filiō: son; singular masculine ablative from filius, fili
 filium: son; singular masculine accusative from filius, fili
 flūmina: rivers; plural neuter nominative from flūmen, flūminis
 flūminibus: rivers; plural neuter ablative from flūmen, flūminis
 habitāta: habitata est = it was inhabited; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus
 haec: this, these; singular feminine nominative or plural neuter nom. or acc. of hic, haec, hoc
 hōc: this; sing. masc. or neut. abl. of hic, haec, hoc
 id: it
 implētēs: filling up; plural common nominative present participle from impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 īnsula: island; singular feminine nominative from īnsula, īnsulae
 invēnī: I found; 2nd person singular present active imperative from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 ītaliā: Italy (accusative case)
 iūdicāvērunt: they ruled; 3rd person plural perfect active from iūdicō, iūdicare, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus
 Latinī: Latin; of Latinus, the king of the Latins who gave his daughter Lavinia in marriage to Aeneas
 Latinōrum: Latin; of Latinum; of/in (good/correct/plain) Latin (language); Roman/Italian; plural masculine genitive from Latinus, Latina, Latinum
 Lāviniam: Lavinia, the wife of Aeneas and son of Latinus
 mare: sea; singular neuter nominative from mare, maris
 marī: sea; singular neuter ablative from mare, maris
 merīdiem: mid-day; singular masculine accusative from meridiēs, meridiē
 mortem: death; singular feminine accusative from mors, mortis
 multa: many; singular feminine nominative from multus, multa
 -um, - plūrimus -a -um
 negōtiātiōnis: business; singular feminine genitive from negōtiātiō, negōtiātiōnis
 nōmine: named; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 obtinuit: he obtained; 3rd person singular perfect active from

obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus
 occidentem: west (accusative case)
 ölm: one day, once upon a time
 omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
 orientem: east (accusative case)
 partēs: parts; plural feminine nominative from pars, partis
 peperit: she gave birth; 3rd person singular perfect from pariō, parere, peperi, partus
 per: through
 Pici: Picus, the first king of the Latins and the son of Saturn (genitive case). Unrelated to the Picts, a group that lived in Scotland.
 portandās: carrying; plural feminine accusative gerund from porto, portare, portavi, portatus
 post: behind, after, since
 posteā: thereafter, later
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quasi: as if, like, as much as
 quis: who
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 ratēs: rafts, barks, vessels; plural feminine nominative from ratis, ratis
 rēgnū: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēgnū, rēgnī
 Rōmānōrum: Romans; plural masculine genitive from Rōmānūs, -a -um
 Sabrīnae: the River Severn, the longest river in Britain. Sabrīnae is probably in the nominative case here.
 Saturnī: of Saturn, the Roman god (genitive case)
 scīre: to know; present active infinitive from sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus
 scriptū: scriptū est = it was written; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from scribō, scribēre, scripsi, scriptus
 sed: but
 septentriōnēm: north; singular masculine accusative from septentriō, septentriōnis
 sī: if
 sīc: thus
 Silvius: Silvius, a son of Aeneas (accusative case)
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
 superātō: having overcome; ablative past passive participle from superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus
 tamen: however
 Tamesis: the River Thames
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus, temporis
 Troiānum: Trojan; singular neuter nominative from Trojānūs, Trojāna, Trojānum
 Turnō: Turnus, a king of the Rutuli killed by Aeneas (ablative case)
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 uxōrem: wife; singular feminine accusative from uxor, uxōris
 vehēbantur: was being carried; 3rd person plural imperfect passive from vehō, vehere, vēxi, vectus
 vel: or
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēni, ventus
 voluerit: he will have wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active subjunctive from volō, velle, voluī, -

Silvius autem dūxit uxōrem et grāvida fuit et nūntiātum est Aenēae¹, quod nurus sua grāvida esset et mīsit ad Ascanium filium suum, ut mitteret magum suum ad cōnsīderandam uxōrem, ut explōrāret quid habēret in uterō, sī masculum vel fēminam. Et magus cōnsīderāvit uxōrem et reversus est. Propter hanc vāticinātiōnem magus occīsus est ab Ascaniō, quia dīxit Ascaniō, quod masculum habēret in uterō mulier et filius² mortis erit, quia occīdet patrem suum et mātrem suam et erit exōsus omnibus hominibus. Sīc ēvenit: in nātīvitāte illīus mulier mortua est et nūtrītus est filius et vocātum est nōmen eius Brūtō.

¹*Silvius then married a woman and she was pregnant and (this) was announced to Aeneas, that his daughter-in-law was pregnant.*

²*That the woman had a male in (her) womb and he will be a bringer of death. filius mortis could be parsed two ways: son of death, with mortis being singular genitive, or filius mortīs: son with deaths, with mortīs being ablative plural. In either case, the context makes it clear that the child is fated to bring death to his mother and father.*

ab: from, out of, by, since	sīc: thus
ad: to, towards, at, according to	Silvius: Silvius, son of Aeneas (or Ascanius)
Aenēae: Aeneas, Trojan prince and legendary founder of Alba Longa, birthplace of Romulus and Remus (dative case)	sua: her/its; sing. fem. nom. or abl. or neuter nom. or acc. from suus
Ascaniō: Ascanius, legendary king of Alba Longa, son of Aeneas (ablative or dative case)	suam: her; singular feminine acc. from suus
Ascaniū: Ascanius, legendary king of Alba Longa, son of Aeneas (accusative case)	suū: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
autem: but, however, moreover	ut: so that
Brūtō: Brutus; singular masculine nominative from Brūtus, Brūtī	uterō: womb; singular masculine ablative from uterus, uterī
cōsiderandam: considering; singular feminine accusative gerund from cōsiderō, cōsiderāre, cōsiderāvī, cōsiderātus	uxōrem: wife; singular feminine accusative from uxor, uxōris
cōsiderāvī: he considered; 3rd person singular perfect active from cōsiderō, cōsiderāre, cōsiderāvī, cōsiderātus	cōsiderātus: accusative from cōsiderātū, cōsiderātōnis
dīxit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dicere, dīxi, dictus	vel: or
dūxit: he lead; 3rd person singular perfect from dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus	vocātū: vocātū est = he was called; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātū
eiūs: his/her/its	
erit: he will be; 3rd person singular future active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	
esset: he (might) have been; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	
et: and	
ēvenīt: it happened; 3rd person singular present active from ēveniō, ēvenīre, ēvenī, ēventus	
exōsus: hateful or hated; singular masculine nominative from exōsus, exōsa, exōsum	
explōrāret: he might investigate; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from explōrō, explōrāre, explōrāvī, explōrātus	
fēminam: woman, wife; singular feminine accusative from fēmina, fēminae	
filium: son; singular masculine accusative from filius, filī	
filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, filī	
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	
gravida: pregnant; singular feminine nominative from gravidus, gravida, gravidum	
habēret: he (might) have had; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from habeō, habēre, habūi, habitus	
hanc: this; singular feminine accusative of hic, haec, hoc	
hominibus: persons, men; plural masculine ablative from homō, hominis	
illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
magum: magician; singular masculine accusative from magus, magī	
magus: magician; singular masculine nominative from magus, magī	
masculum: male; singular neuter accusative from masculus, mascula, masculūm	
mātrem: mother; singular feminine accusative from māter, mātris	
mīsit: he sent; 3rd person singular perfect active from mittō, mittere, mīsi, missus	
mitteret: he was sending; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from mittō, mittere, mīsi, missus	
mōrtis: death; singular feminine genitive from mōrs, mortis	
mōrtua + est: she died; singular feminine nominative perfect participle from moriō, morī, mortuus	
mulier: woman; singular feminine nominative from mulier, mulieris	
nātīvitātē: birth, nativity; singular feminine ablative from nātīvitās, nātīvitātis	
nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis	
nūntiātū: nūntiātū est = it was announced; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus	
nūrus: young woman, daughter-in-law; singular feminine nominative from nūrus, nūrūs	
nūtrītūs + est: he was nourished; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from nūtrīo, nūtrīre, nūtrīvī, nūtrītūs	
occidēt: he will kill; 3rd person singular future from occidō, occidere, occīdī, occīsus	
occīsus: occīsus est = he was killed; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from occidō, occidere, occīdī, occīsus	
omnībus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne	
patrem: father; singular masculine accusative from pater, patris	
propter: because of, near	
quīa: because	
quid: who; singular neuter nom. or acc. of quis	
quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui	
reversus: reversus + est = he returned	
sī: if	

Post multum intervāllum iuxtā¹ vāticinātiōnem magī, dum ipse lūdēbat cum aliīs, ictū² sagittae occīdit patrem suum nōn dē industriā, sed cāsū. Et expulsus est ab Ītaliā et arminilis fuit et vēnit ad īsulās maris Tyrrēnī et expulsus³ est ā Graecīs causā occīsiōnis Turnī, quam Aenēās occiderat, et pervēnit ad Gallōs usque et ibī condidit cīvitātem Turonōrum, quae vocātur Turnīs. Et posteā ad istam pervēnit īsulam, quae ā nōmine suō accēpit nōmen, id est Brittanniam et implēvit eam cum suō genere et habitāvit ibī. Ab illō autem diē habitāta est Brittannia usque in hodiernum diem.

¹After a long interval (of time) according to the prophecy.

²A shot of an arrow killed his father not on purpose, but by accident.

³He was expelled by the Greeks because of the killing of Turnus, whom Aeneas killed. Since Silvius was related to Aeneas, who killed Turnus, king of the Rutuli, the Greeks expelled Silvius from their land.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 accēpit: he received, he grasped; 3rd person singular perfect active from accipīō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aeneas: Aeneas, Trojan prince and legendary founder of Alba Longa, birthplace of Romulus and Remus
 aliūs: others; plural dative from aliūs, alia, aliud
 arminilis: this is not a standard Latin word and the meaning is unknown. Perhaps it means that he was without weapons.
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Britannia: Britain
 Britannīam: Britain (accusative case)
 cāsū: accidentally, by chance (adverb)
 causa: cause, reason; singular feminine nominative from causa, causae
 cīvitātem: civilization; singular feminine accusative from cīvitās, cīvitātis
 condidit: he founded, he built; 3rd person singular perfect active from condō, condere, condidi, conditus
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēi
 diem: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diēi
 dum: while, as long as, until
 eam: her; singular feminine accusative from is, ea, id
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 expulsus: expulsus est = he was driven out; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from expellō, expellere, expuli, expulsus
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 Gallōs: Gauls; plural masculine accusative from Gallus, Galli
 genere: family, offspring; singular neuter ablative from genus, generis
 Graecis: by the Greeks; plural masculine ablative from Graecus, Graeci
 habitāta: habitāta est = it was inhabited; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus
 habitāvit: he inhabited; 3rd person singular perfect active from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus
 hodiernum: today; singular neuter nominative from hodiernus, hodierna, hodiernum
 ibī: there, then
 ictū: blow, stroke; singular masculine ablative from ictus, ictūs
 id: it
 illō: these; singular masculine ablative from ille, illa, illud
 implēvit: he fulfilled, filled up; 3rd person singular perfect active from impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 industriā: diligence, purpose; singular feminine ablative from industria, industriae
 īsulam: island; singular feminine accusative from īsula, īsulae
 īsulās: islands; plural feminine accusative from īsula, īsulae
 intervallum: interval, distance; singular neuter accusative from intervallum, intervalli
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 istam: that; singular feminine accusative from iste, ista, istud
 Italiā: Italy; singular feminine ablative from Italia, Italiae
 iuxtā: according to
 lūdēbat: he was playing; 3rd person singular imperfect active from lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsus
 magī: of the magician; singular masculine genitive from magus, magī
 maris: sea; singular neuter genitive from mare, maris
 multum: many; singular neuter nominative from multus, multa -um, -a, plurimūs -a -um
 nōmen: name; singular neuter accusative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 nō: not
 occidit: he killed; 3rd person singular perfect from occīdō, occidere, occidī, occīsus
 occīsōnis: murder; singular feminine genitive from occīsō, occīsōnis
 patrem: father; singular masculine accusative from pater, patris
 pervenīt: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from perveniō, pervenire, pervenī, perventus
 post: behind, after, since
 posteā: thereafter, later
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quam: how? how much?
 sagittae: of an arrow; singular feminine genitive from sagitta, sagittae
 sed: but

suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
 suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
 Turnī: of Turnus, a king of the Rutuli killed by Aeneas (ablative case)
 Turnīs: Tours, France
 Turonōrum: of the people of Tours, France, or perhaps of the descendant of Turnus
 Tyrrenī: the Tyrrhenian Sea, which lies off the western coast of Italy
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vāticinātiōnem: prophecy; singular feminine accusative from vāticinātiō, vāticinātiōnis
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 vocātūr: to be called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

11 Aenēās autem rēgnāvit tribus annīs apud Latīnōs. Ascanius rēgnāvit annīs 37, post quem Silvius Aenēae filius rēgnāvit annīs 12, Postumus¹ annīs trīgintā novem, ā quō Albānōrum rēgēs Silvīi appellātī sunt, cuius frāter erat Brittō. Quandō rēgnābat Brittō in Brittanniā, Helī² sacerdōs iūdicābat in Isrāhēl et tunc arca testāmentī ab aliēnigenīs possidēbātur. Postumus frāter eius apud Latīnōs rēgnābat.

12 Post intervāllum multōrum annōrum nōn minus 800 Pictī vēnērunt et occupāvērunt īsulās, quae vocantur Orcadēs, et posteā ex īsulīs vastāvērunt regiōnēs multās et occupāvērunt eās in sinistrālī plāgā Brittanniae, et maneant ibī tertiam partem Brittanniae tenentēs usque in hodiernum diem.

¹Postumus ("late-born") appears to be the name of a Latin king who reigned after Silvius, perhaps of a son of Brutus born after Brutus's death. Brittō appears to be a variant spelling of Brutus.

²*Eli the priest was judging in Israel and then the ark of the testimony was possessed by foreigners.* The account of the Philistines seizing the Ark of the Covenant is found in 1 Samuel 4.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 Aenēae: Aeneas, Trojan prince and legendary founder of Alba Longa, birthplace of Romulus and Remus (genitive case)
 Aenēās: Aeneas, Trojan prince and legendary founder of Alba Longa, birthplace of Romulus and Remus
 Albānōrum: of the people of Alba Longa
 aliēnīgenīs: strangers, foreigners; plural masculine ablative from aliēnīgena, aliēnīgenae
 annīs: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī
 annōrum: of years; plural masculine genitive from annus, annī
 appellātī: appellātī sunt = were named; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus
 apud: among
 arca: ark; singular feminine nominative from arca, arcae
 Ascaniūs: Ascanius, legendary king of Alba Longa, son of Aeneas (ablative or dative case)
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Brittānnīa: Britain
 Brittānnīae: Britain (nominative plural or genitive singular case)
 Brittō: Brittō, an early settler of Britain
 cuius: whose; singular genitive from quis
 diem: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diēi
 eās: their; plural feminine accusative from is, ea, id
 eius: his/her/its
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 ex: out of, from
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 frāter: brother; singular masculine nominative from frāter, frātris
 Heli: Eli, Old Testament high priest.
 hodiernum: today; singular neuter nominative from hodiernus, hodierna, hodiernum
 ibī: there, then
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 insulās: islands; plural feminine accusative from īnsula, īnsulæ
 īnsulīs: islands; plural feminine ablative from īnsula, īnsulæ
 intervallūm: interval, distance; singular neuter nominative from intervallum, intervallī
 Isrāhēl: Israel; singular masculine nominative from Isrāhēl, Isrāhēlis
 iūdicābat: he was judging; 3rd person singular imperfect active from iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus
 Latinōs: Latins, of Latium; plural masculine accusative from Latinus, Latina, Latinūm
 maneant: he remains; 3rd person plural present active subjunctive from maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 minus: less
 multās: many; plural feminine accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 multōrum: many; plural masculine genitive from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 nōn: not
 novem: nine; from novem, nonus -a -um, noveni -ae -a, novie (n)s
 occupāvērunt: they seized, overtook, attacked; 3rd person plural perfect active from occupo, occupare, occupavī, occupatus
 Orcades: The Orkney Isles, located off the northern coast of Scotland
 partem: part; singular feminine accusative from pars, partis
 Pictū: Picts, a Scottish tribe;
 plāgā: coast; singular feminine ablative from plāga, plāgæ
 possidēbātur: it was being possessed; infinitive
 post: behind, after, since
 posteā: thereafter, later
 Postumus: apparently the name of a king; the word itself means late, particularly of a child born after a father's death; singular masculine nominative from postumus, postuma, postumum
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quandō: when, because
 quem: what, singular masculine accusative of qui
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from rēx, rēgis
 rēgiōnēs: regions; plural feminine nominative from regiō, regiōnis
 rēgnābat: he was reigning; 3rd person singular imperfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 sacerdōs: priest; singular common nominative from sacerdōs, sacerdotis
 Silvīi: Silvius, son of Aeneas (or Ascanius) (genitive case)
 Silvius: Silvius, son of Aeneas (or Ascanius)
 sinistrālī: left, probably means north in this context, singular

feminine ablative from sinistra, sinistrae
 tenentēs: holding; plural common nominative present participle from teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus
 tertiam: third; singular feminine accusative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 testamenti: of the testament; singular neuter genitive from testāmentum, testāmentī
 tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 trīgintā: thirty
 tunc: then
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vāstāvērunt: they ravaged, they devastated; 3rd person plural perfect active from vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātus
 vēnērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from veniō, venire, vēni, ventus
 vocāntur: they are called; 3rd person plural present passive from voco, vocāre, vocātus

13 Novissime autem Scottī vēnērunt ā partibus Hispāniae ad Hiberniam. Prīmus autem vēnit Partholomus cum mīlle hominibus dē virīs et mulieribus et crēvērunt usque ad quattuor mīlia hominum et vēnit mortālitās super eōs et in ūnā septimānā omnēs periērunt et nōn remānsit ex illīs etiam ūnus. Secundus venit ad Hiberniam Nimeth filius quīdam Agnōminis, quī fertur¹ nāvigāsse super mare annum et dīmidium et posteā tenuit portum in Hiberniā frāctīs nāvibus eius et mānsit ibīdem per multōs annōs et iterum nāvigāvit cum suīs et ad Hispāniam reversus est. Et posteā vēnērunt trēs filiī mīlitis Hispāniae² cum trīgintā ciulīs apud illōs et cum trīgintā coniugibus³ in ūnāquāque ciulā et mānsērunt ibī per spatium ūnīus annī.

¹*Who is said to have sailed over the sea for a year and a half and afterwards stayed in a harbor in Ireland, his boats having been fractured.*

²*Three sons of a soldier of Spain.* This text gives no name or further information about whom this solider might be.

³The thirty wives in each ship appears to mean that the voyage is meant to establish a civilization. Presumably the wives all have their own husbands, and aren't all married to the three sons.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Agnōminis: father of Nimeth. Interestingly, Agnōminis means
 surname or nickname, from agnōmen, agnōminis
 anni: year; singular masculine genitive from annus, anni
 annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from annus, anni
 annum: year; singular masculine accusative from annus, anni
 apud: at, by, near
 autem: but, however, moreover
 ciula: longship; singular feminine nominative variant spelling
 from ceola, ceolae
 ciulīs: longships; plural feminine ablative variant spelling from
 ceola, ceolae
 coniugibus: spouses; plural common ablative from conjunx,
 conjugis
 crēvērunt: they increased, they came forth; 3rd person plural
 perfect active from cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dīmidīum: half; singular neuter nominative from dīmidium,
 dīmidīi
 eius: his/her/its
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 etiam: still
 ex: out of, from
 fertur: is reported; 3rd person singular present passive from
 ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus
 filiī: sons; plural masculine nominative from filius, filī
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, filī
 frāctīs: having been broken; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus
 Hibernia: Ireland; singular feminine nominative from Hibernia,
 Hiberniae
 Hiberniam: Ireland; singular feminine accusative from Hibernia,
 Hiberniae
 Hispāniae: of Hispania; singular feminine genitive from
 Hispānia, Hispāniae
 Hispāniām: Hispania; singular feminine accusative from
 Hispānia, Hispāniae
 hominībus: persons, men; plural masculine ablative from homō,
 hominis
 hominīnum: of persons, of men; plural masculine genitive from
 homō, hominis
 ibī: there, then
 ibidem: in the same place
 illīs: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 iterum: again
 mānsērunt: they have remained; 3rd person plural perfect
 active from maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 mānsit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris
 mīlia: one thousand
 mīlitīs: of a soldier; singular masculine genitive from mīles,
 mīlitīs
 mīlle: one thousand
 mortālītās: mortality, plague; singular feminine nominative from
 mortālītās, mortālītās
 mulierībus: women; plural feminine ablative from mulier,
 mulieris
 multōs: many; plural masculine accusative from multus, multa
 -um, - , plūrimus -a -um
 nāvībus: boats; plural feminine ablative from nāvis, nāvis
 nāvigāisse: to have sailed; perfect infinitive from nāvigō,
 nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus
 nāvigāvit: he sailed; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus
 Nimith: an early settler of Ireland
 nōn: not
 novissimē: most recently; superlative adverb from novus, nova
 -um, novior -or -us, novissimus -a -um
 omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis,
 omnis, omne
 Partholomus: an earlier settler of Ireland.
 partībus: parts; plural feminine ablative from pars, partis
 per: through
 perivērunt: they perished; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 pereō, perire, perivī(i), peritus
 portūm: harbor, port; singular masculine accusative from
 portus, portus
 posteā: thereafter, later
 prīmus: first; singular masculine nominative from prīmus,
 prīma, prīmum
 quā: what; singular female ablative of qui

Et posteā cōspiciunt turrim vitream¹ in mediō marī et hominēs cōspiciēbant super turrim et quaerēbant loquī ad illōs et numquam respondēbant et ipsī ūnō annō ad oppugnātiōnem turris properāvērunt cum omnibus ciulīs suīs et cum omnibus mulieribus exceptā ūnā ciulā, quae cōfrācta est naufragiō, in quā erant virī trīgintā totidemque mulierēs. Et aliae nāvēs nāvigāvērunt ad expugnandam turrim, et dum omnēs dēscenderant in lītore, quod erat circā turrim, operuit illōs mare et dēmersī sunt et nōn ēvāsit ūnus ex illīs. Et dē familiā illīus ciulae, quae relictā est propter frāctiōnem, tōta Hibernia implēta est usque in hodiernum diem. Et posteā vēnērunt paulātim ā partibus Hispāniae et tenuērunt regiōnēs plūrimās.

¹The glass tower shares some similarities to the crystal column encountered by the Irish monk St. Brendan on his sea voyage in the *Nāvigātiō Sānctī Brendānī Abbātis*, namely its glassy construction and its being in the middle of the sea.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliae: other; plural feminine nominative from *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from *annus*, *annī*
 circā: around, about
 ciula: longship; singular feminine nominative variant spelling from *ceola*, *ceolae*
 ciulæ: longship; singular feminine genitive or plural nominative variant spelling from *ceola*, *ceolæ*
 ciulīs: longship; plural feminine dative or ablative variant spelling from *ceola*, *ceolæ*
 cōfrācta: cōfrācta est = was broken into pieces; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from
 cōspiciēbant: they were observing; 3rd person plural imperfect active from cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspēxī, cōspectus
 cōspiciunt: they observe; 3rd person plural present active from cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspēxī, cōspectus
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dēmersi: dēmersi sunt = they were submerged; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from dēmergō, dēmergere, dēmersi, dēmersus
 dēscenderant: they had descended; 3rd person plural pluperfect active from dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendi, dēscēnsus
 diem: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diēi
 dum: while, as long as, until
 erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum esse, fui, futūrus
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 ēvāsit: he avoided, he escaped; 3rd person singular perfect active from ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsi, ēvāsus
 ex: out of, from
 exceptā: except; feminine ablative from exceptus, -a, -um
 expugnandam: assaulting, storming, conquering; singular feminine accusative gerund from expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, expugnātus
 familiā: family; singular feminine ablative from *familia*, *familiae*
 frāctiōnem: breaking; singular feminine accusative from frāctiō, frāctionis
 Hibernia: Ireland; singular feminine nominative from *Hibernia*, *Hiberniae*
 Hispāniae: of Hispania; singular feminine genitive from Hispania, Hispāniae
 hodiernum: today; singular neuter nominative from *hodiernus*, *hodierna*, *hodiernum*
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine accusative from homō, hominis
 illīs: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illiūs: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 implēta: implēta est = was filled up; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from impleō, implēre, implēvi, implētus
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ipsi: they themselves; plural masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 lītore: beach, shore; singular neuter ablative from lītus, lītoris
 loquī: to speak; infinitive
 mare: sea; singular neuter nominative from *mare*, *maris*
 mari: sea; singular neuter ablative from *mare*, *maris*
 mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from *medius*, *media*, medium
 mulierēs: women; plural feminine nominative from *mulier*, *mulieris*
 mulieribus: women; plural feminine ablative from *mulier*, *mulieris*
 naufragiō: shipwreck; singular neuter ablative from *naufragium*, *naufragiū*
 nāvēs: boats; plural feminine nominative from *nāvis*, *nāvis*
 nāvigāvērunt: they sailed; 3rd person plural perfect active from nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus
 nōn: not
 numquam: never
 omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from *omnis*, *omnis*, *omne*
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from *omnis*, *omnis*, *omne*
 operuit: it covered; 3rd person singular perfect active from operiō, operire, operiū, opertus
 oppugnātiōnem: assault, attack; singular feminine accusative from oppugnatiō, oppugnātiōnis
 partibus: parts; plural feminine ablative from *pars*, *partis*
 paulātīm: little by little
 plūrimās: very many; plural feminine accusative from multus, multa -um, plūrimus -a -um
 posteā: thereafter, later
 properāvērunt: they hurried; 3rd person plural perfect active from properō, properāre, properāvī, properātus

14 Novissimē vēnit Damhoctor et ibī habitāvit cum omnī genere suō usque hodiē in Brittanniā. Istoreth Istorīnī filius tenuit Dalriēta cum suīs; Builc autem cum suīs tenuit Euboniam īsulam et aliās circiter; filiī autem Liethān obtinuērunt in regiōne Demetōrum et in aliīs regiōnibus, id est Guir¹ Cetguēlī, dōnec expulsī sunt² ā Cunedā et ā filiīs eius ab omnibus Brittannicīs regiōnibus.

15 Sī quis autem scīre voluerit³, quandō vel quō tempore fuit inhabitābilis et dēserta Hibernia, sīc mihi perītissimī Scottōrum nūntiāvērunt. Quandō vēnērunt per mare rubrum filiī Isrāhēl, Aegyptiī vēnērunt et secūtī⁴ sunt et dēmersī, ut in lēge⁵ legitur. Erat vir nōbilis dē Scythiā cum magnā familiā apud Aegyptiōs et expulsus est ā rēgnō suō et ibī erat, quandō Aegyptiī mersī sunt, et nōn perrēxit ad persequendum⁶ populum Deī. Illī autem, quī superfuerant, iniērunt cōnsilium, ut expellerent illum, nē⁷ rēgnum illōrum obsīderet et occupāret, quia fortēs illōrum dēmersī⁸ erant in rubrum mare, et expulsus est.

¹Guir and Cetguēlī appear to be two different places joined together by the author.

²expulsī sunt = they were expelled

³If anyone, however, will want to know, when or in what time Ireland was uninhabited and deserted, thus the most learned of the Scots narrated to me.

⁴The Egyptians came and followed and were drowned. secūtī sunt has an active meaning (they followed) because sequor is deponent; dēmersī sunt has a passive meaning (they were drowned) because dēmergere is not deponent. A deponent verb is a verb that takes passive endings but is active in meaning.

⁵As is read in the Law. The Law mentioned here is the Law of Moses, meaning the first five books of the Bible: Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy. The incident related is in Exodus 14: Moses miraculously parted the Red Sea so that the Isrealites could pass through on dry ground, and then when Pharoah's army pursued them the Red Sea closed again upon them, drowning them.

⁶And he did not go out to pursue (for pursuing) the people of God.

⁷So that he might not beseige and occupy their kingdom. The subjunctive is used in obsīderet and occupāret because of the nē clause.

⁸Because their strong (men) had been drowned in the Red Sea.

ā: from, out of, by, since	name
ab: from, out of, by, since	māgnā: large; singular feminine ablative from māgnus, māgna
ad: to, towards, at, according to	-um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
Aegyptiū: Egyptians; plural masculine nominative from	mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris
Aegyptius, Aegyptiū	mersī: having been plunged, sunk, drowned; plural masculine
Aegyptiōs: Egyptians, plural masculine accusative from	nominative perfect passive participle from mergō, mergere,
Aegyptius, Aegyptiū	mersī, mersus
aliās: others; plural feminine accusative from alius, alia, aliud	mihī: to me;(pronoun)
aliīs: others; plural ablative from alius, alia, aliud	nē: not
apud: at, by, near	nōbilis: noble, famous, high-born; singular common nominative
autem: and, moreover	from nōbilis, nōbile, nōbiliōr -or -us, nōbiliōs -a -um
Brittannia: Britain	nōn: not
Brittanicīs: Britanic (plural ablative case)	novissimē: lastly, most recently; adverb from novus, nova -um,
Buīc: the name of a tribal leader	novior -or -us, novissimus -a -um
Cetgueli: possibly Cydweli (Kidwelly), a place in south-west	nūntiāvērunt: they related, narrated, announced; 3rd person
Wales	plural perfect active from nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī,
circiter: near, close	nūntiātūs
cōnsilium: plan, advice, council; singular neuter accusative from	obsiderat: he besieged; 3rd person singular imperfect active
cōnsilium, cōsiliū	subjunctive from obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus
cum: with	obtinērunt: they obtained; 3rd person plural perfect active
Cuneda: Cunedda ap Edern, King of Gwynedd, an early Welsh	from obtineō, obtinēre, obtinū, obtentus
leader who reigned circa AD 450-460. Cunedda is mentioned	occupārēt: he seized; 3rd person singular imperfect active
again in section 62, there named Cunedag.	subjunctive from occupo, occupare, occupavi, occupatus
Dalriēta: Dál Riata (Dalriada), a Gaelic kingdom on the western	omni: all, every; singular ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
seaboard of Scotland and northern Ireland	omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
Damhoctor: the name of a tribal leader	per: through
dē: of, from, away from, down from	perītissimi: most experienced, knowledgable; plural masculine
Dei: of God; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei	nominative from peritus, perita -um, peritior -or -us,
demersi: having been drowned; plural masculine nominative	peritissimus -a -um
past passive participle from dēmergō, dēmergere, dēmersi,	perrēxēt: he proceeded; 3rd person singular perfect active from
dēmersus	pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus
Demetōrum: of the Demetae, a tribe that lived in a region of	persequēdūm: pursuing; gerund from persequor, persequī,
southwest Wales, modern-day Dyfed.	persecūtūs sum
dēserta: deserted; singular feminine nominative from dēsertus,	populūm: people, populace; singular masculine accusative from
dēserta, dēsertum	populus, populi
dōnec: while, as long as, until	quādō: when, because
eiūs: his/her/its	quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,	quia: because
esse, fui, futūrus	quis: who
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,	quō: what; singular ablative of quis
fui, futūrus	regiōnē: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
et: and	regiōnibus: regions; plural feminine ablative from regiō,
Euboniām: The Isle of Man, an island between Great Britain and	regiōnis
Ireland (accusative case).	rēgnō: kingdom; singular neuter ablative from rēgnūm, rēgnī
expellerēt: they drove out; 3rd person plural imperfect active	rēgnūm: kingdom; singular neuter accusative from rēgnūm,
subjunctive from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus	rēgnī
expulsi: having been driven out; plural masculine nominative	rubrūm: red; singular neuter nominative from ruber, rubra,
perfect passive participle from	rubrum
expulsus: having been driven out; singular masculine	scīrē: to know; present infinitive from sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītūs
nominative perfect passive participle from expellō,	Scottōrūm: of the Scots
expellere, expulī, expulsus	Scythiā: from Scythia, a region on the Pontic steppe
familiā: family; singular feminine ablative from familia, familiae	sēcūtū: sēcūtū + sunt = they followed
filiū: sons; plural masculine nominative from filius, filī	sī: if
filiūs: sons; plural masculine ablative from filius, filī	sīc: thus
filiūs: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, filī	sūi: their; plural ablative of suus
fortēs: strong (men); plural common nominative from fortis,	sūo: their; singular ablative of suus
forte, fortior -or -us, fortissimus -a -um	superfuerant: they had survived, been left over; 3rd person
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse,	plural pluperfect active from supersum, superesse,
fui, futūrus	superfūī, superfutūrus
genere: family, offspring; singular neuter ablative from genus,	tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus,
generis	temporis
Guīr: possibly Gŵyr (Gower), a place in south-west Wales.	tenuit: he held, he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from
habitāvit: he inhabited; 3rd person singular perfect active from	teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus
habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātūs	ūsque: until, all the way, up until
Hibernia: Ireland; singular feminine nominative from Hibernia,	ut: so that
Hiberniae	vel: or
hodiē: today	vēnērūt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from
ibi: there, then	veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
id: it	vēnīt: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō,
illī: those; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud	venire, vēnī, ventus
illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille,	vir: man; singular masculine nominative from vir, virī
illa, illud	voluerit: he will have wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active
illum: that; singular masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud	subjunctive from volō, velle, volūī, -
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
inhabitābilis: uninhabitable (or uninhabited, in this context);	
singular common nominative from inhabitābilis,	
inhabitābilis, inhabitābile	
iniērunt: they began, entered into; 3rd person plural perfect	
active from ineō, inīre, inīvī(ii), initus	
īnsulam: island; singular feminine accusative from īnsula,	
īnsulae	
Isrāhēl: Israel; singular masculine nominative from Isrāhēl,	
Isrāhēlis	
Istōreth: Istōreth, son of Istōrinus	
Istōrinī: Istōrinus, father of Istōreth	
lege: law; singular feminine ablative from lēx, lēgis	
legitūr: is read; 3rd person singular present passive from legō,	
legerē, lēgī, lēctus	
Liethan: a tribal leader (?), likely a Latinized version of a Celtic	

At ille per quadrāgintā et duōs annōs ambulāvit per Āfricam, et vēnērunt ad ārās¹ Filistīnōrum per Lacum Salīnārum et vēnērunt inter Rusicadam et montēs Azāiae et vēnērunt per flūmen Malvam et trānsiērunt per Maritāniam ad columnās Herculis et nāvigāvērunt Tyrrēnum mare et pervēnērunt ad Hispāniam usque et ibī habitāvērunt per multōs annōs et crēvērunt et multiplicātī sunt nimis et gēns illōrum multiplicāta est nimis. Et posteā vēnērunt ad Hiberniam post mīlle et duōs annōs, postquam mersī sunt Aegyptiī in rubrum mare, et ad regionēs Dalriēta, in tempore, quō rēgnābat Brūtus apud Rōmānōs, ā quō cōsulēs esse² coepērunt, deinde tribūnī plēbis ac dictātōrēs. Et cōsulēs rūrsum rem pūblicam obtinuērunt per annōs 447, quae prius³ rēgia dignitāte damnātā fuerat.

Brittōnēs vēnērunt in tertīā aetāte mundī ad Brittanniam; Scottī autem in quārtā obtinuērunt Hiberniam. Scottī autem, quī sunt in occidente, et Pictī dē aquilōne pugnābant ūnanimiter et ūnō impetū contrā Brittōnēs indēsinenter, quia sine armīs ūtēbantur⁴ Brittōnēs. Et post multum intervāllum temporis Rōmānī monarchiam tōtīus mundī obtinuērunt.

¹The Altars of the Philistines and the Lake of Salt-Works are likely places in North Africa, since it appears that the journey taken is west from Egypt across North Africa, then across the Straits of Gibralter to Spain. It's possible that the Lacum Salīnārum refers to the Dead Sea, which is very salty, in which case the Altars of the Philistines would refer to a place that was in Philistine territory.

²From which consuls began to be, then tribunes of the plebs and dictators.

³And consuls again held the republic for 447 years, which before had been condemned by royal dignity. This refers to the period in which Rome had seven legendary kings, the last of whom was overthrown and the consulship reinstated. *Condemned by royal dignity* means that the author feels the period of the kings was bad for Rome.

⁴Because the Britons were using no weapons. Perhaps this means the Britons were under-armed, rather than completely unarmed.

ā: from, out of, by, since	multōs: many; plural masculine accusative from multus, multa -um, -a, plurimus -a -um
ac: and	multum: many; singular neuter nominative from multus, multa -um, -a, plurimus -a -um
ad: to, towards, at, according to	mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundi nāvigāvērunt: they sailed; 3rd person plural perfect active from nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvi, nāvigātus
Aegyptiū: Egyptian; singular masculine genitive from Aegyptius, Aegyptii	nimis: too much, extremely
aetāte: age; singular feminine ablative from aetās, aetātis	obtinuērunt: they obtained; 3rd person plural perfect active from obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus
Africam: Africa; singular feminine accusative from África, Áfricæ	occidente: west; singular masculine ablative from occidēns, occidentis
ambulāvē: he walked; 3rd person singular perfect active from ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātus	per: through
annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from annus, annī	pervenērunt: they arrived; 3rd person plural perfect active from perveniō, pervenēre, pervenī, perventus
apud: at, by, near	Picti: Picts, a Scottish tribe; plural masculine nominative plēbis: common people; singular feminine genitive from plēbs, plēbis
aquilōne: north; singular masculine ablative from aquilō, aquilōnis	post: behind, after, since
ārās: altars, refuges; plural feminine accusative from āra, ārae	postea: thereafter, later
armis: weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armī	postquam: since, since then, after
at: and	prius: before
autem: but, however, moreover	pūblicam: rem pūblicam = republic (literally 'public things')
Azariae: a mountain range in North Africa, possibly the Aures Mountains in Algeria	pugnābant: they were fighting; 3rd person plural imperfect active from pugnō, pugnare, pugnāvi, pugnātus
Brittāniā: Britain (accusative case)	quadrāgintā: 40
Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from Brittō, Brittōnis	quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
Brūtus: Brutus; singular masculine nominative from Brūtus, Brūti	quartā: fourth; singular feminine ablative from quattuor, quartus -a -um, quaterni -ae -a, -
coepērunt: they started; from coepī, coepisse, coepī, coeptum	qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
columnās: columns; plural feminine accusative from columnna, columnae	quia: because
cōsulēs: consuls; plural masculine nominative from cōsul, cōsulis	quō: what; singular ablative of quis
contrā: against, away from, facing	rēgīā: royal palace, court; singular feminine ablative from regiūs, regia, regium
crēvērunt: they increased, they came forth; 3rd person plural perfect active from cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus	regiōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
Dalriēta: Dál Riata (Dalriada), a Gaelic kingdom on the western seaboard of Scotland and northern Ireland	rēgnābat: he was reigning; 3rd person singular imperfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvi, rēgnātus
damnātā: condemned; singular feminine ablative perfect passive participle from damno, damnare, damnavi, damnatus	rem: thing; rem pūblicam = republic (literally 'public things')
dē: of, from, away from, down from	Rōmānī: Romans
deinde: after	Rōmānōs: Romans; plural masculine accusative from Rōmānūs, -a -um
dictātōrēs: dictators; plural masculine nominative from dictātor, dictātōris	rubrum: red; singular neuter accusative from ruber, rubra, rubrum
dignitātē: worth, honor, esteem, rank; singular feminine ablative from dignitās, dignitātis	rūrsum: again
duōs: two	Rusicadam: Rusicada, the Roman city in northeastern Algeria, modern-day Skikda
esse: to be	salinārūm: of salt-pits, salt-works; plural feminine genitive from salina, salinæ
et: and	Scotti: the Scots
Filistīnōrūm: of the Philistines	sine: without
flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from flūmen, flūminis	sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus
fuerat: it had been; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus, temporis
gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from gēns, gentis	temporis: of times, of periods; singular neuter genitive from tempus, temporis
habitāvērunt: they inhabited; 3rd person plural perfect active from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus	tertiā: third; singular feminine ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
Herculīs: of Hercules; singular masculine genitive from Herculēs, Herculīs	tōtius: of the whole; singular genitive from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
Hiberniā: Ireland; singular feminine accusative from Hibernia, Hiberniae	trānsiērunt: they went over, they crossed over; 3rd person plural perfect active from trāseō, trānsire, trānsivi(ii), trānsitus
Hispāniā: Hispania, modern-day Spain; singular feminine accusative from Hispānia, Hispāniae	tribūnī: tribunes; plural masculine nominative from tribūnus, tribūnī
ibī: there, then	Tyrrenū: the Tyrrhenian Sea, which lies on the west coast of Italy
ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud	ūnanimiter: unanimously, as one body/spirit
illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud	ūnō: one; singular masculine ablative from ūnus -a -um, primus -a -um, singuli -ae -a, semel
impetuī: attack, assault, fury; singular masculine ablative from impetus, impetūs	ūsque: until, all the way, up until
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	ūtēbantur: they were using; infinitive
indēsinenter: incessantly, ceaselessly	vēnērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from veniō, venire, vēni, ventus
inter: between, among, during	
intervallūm: interval, distance; singular neuter accusative from intervallū, intervallī	
lacūm: lake; singular masculine accusative from lacus, lacūs.	
Malvam: possibly the Moulouya River in Morocco	
mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris	
Maritāniā: Mauretania, northwest Africa	
mersi: having been plunged, sunk, drowned; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from mergō, mergere, mersī, mersus	
mille: one thousand	
monarchiā: monarchy; singular feminine accusative from monarchia, monarchiae	
montēs: mountains; plural masculine accusative from mōns, montis	
multiplicātā: having been multiplied; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from multiplicō, multiplicāre, multiplicāvi, multiplicātus	
multiplicātū: having been multiplied; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from multiplicō, multiplicāre, multiplicāvi, multiplicātus	

16 Ā prīmō annō, quō Saxonēs vēnērunt in Brittanniam usque ad annum quārtum Mermīnī rēgis supputantur annī 329. Ā nātīvitāte Dominī usque ad adventum Patriciī ad Scottōs 405 annī sunt. Ā morte Patriciī usque ad obitum sānctae Brigidae sexāgintā annī. Ā nātīvitāte Columbae usque mortem Brigidae quattuor annī sunt. Initium compotī: vīgintī trēs cyclī decemnovennalēs ab incarnātiōne dominī usque ad adventum Patriciī in Hiberniam et ipsī annōs efficiunt numerō 438, et ab adventū Patriciī usque ad cyclum decemnovennalem, in quō sumus, vīgintī duo cyclī sunt, id est, 421 sunt¹, duo annī in ogdoade usque in hunc annum, in quō sumus.

¹19*22=420, so presumably the author had good reason to include another year in the calculation.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adventū: singular masculine ablative from *adventus*, *adventūs*
 adventum: arrival; singular masculine accusative from
 adventus, *adventūs*
 anni: year; plural masculine nominative from *annus*, *annī*
 anno: year; singular masculine ablative from *annus*, *annī*
 annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from *annus*, *annī*
 annum: year; singular masculine accusative from *annus*, *annī*
 Brigidae: of Saint Brigid, abbess and patroness Saint of Ireland,
 lived circa 451-525 AD
 Britanniam: Britain (accusative case)
 Columbae: of Saint Columba, 521-597 AD, an Irish abbot and
 missionary sent to the Picts; one of the Twelve Apostles of
 Ireland
 compotū: of the computation; singular masculine genitive from
 compotus, *compotī*
 cyclī: cycles; plural masculine nominative from *cyclus*, *cyclī*
 cyclum: cycle; singular masculine accusative from *cyclus*, *cyclī*
 decemnovennale: nineteen-year cycle; singular accusative
 adjective from *decemnovennalis*
 decemnovennalēs: nineteen-year cycle; plural nominative
 adjective from *decemnovennalis*
 Domini: of the Lord; singular masculine genitive from *dominus*,
 dominī
 duo: two
 efficiunt: they produce; 3rd person plural present active from
 efficiō, *efficere*, *effēcī*, *effectus*
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fūi, *futūrus*
 et: and
 Hiberniam: Ireland; singular feminine accusative from *Hibernia*,
 Hiberniae
 hunc: this; singular masculine accusative of *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*
 id: it
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 incarnatiōne: incarnation; singular feminine ablative from
 incarnatiō, *incarnatiōnis*
 initium: beginning; singular neuter nominative from *initium*,
 initiū
 ipsī: itself; sing. dative or plural masc. nom. from *ipse*, *ipsa*,
 ipsum
 Mermīnī: of King Merminus, an unknown king, possibly Merfyn
 Frych (reigned 825-844 AD)
 morte: death; singular feminine ablative from *mors*, *mortis*
 mortem: death; singular feminine accusative from *mors*, *mortis*
 nātivitāte: birth, nativity; singular feminine ablative from
 nātivitās, *nātivitātis*
 numerō: number, division, troop; singular masculine ablative
 from *numerus*, *numeri*
 obitum: death; singular masculine accusative from *obitus*,
 obitūs
 ogdoade: eight, eight-year cycle; singular feminine ablative
 from *ogdoas*, *ogdoadis*; singular feminine ablative from
 ogdoas, *ogdoadis*
 Patriciū: of Saint Patrick, patron saint of Ireland
 prīmō: first; singular masculine ablative from *prīmus*, *prīma*,
 prīmū
 quārtum: fourth
 quattuor: 4
 quō: in which; singular ablative of *quis*
 rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from *rēx*, *rēgis*
 sānctae: holy
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 Scottōs: the Scots (plural accusative case)
 sexāgintā: sixty
 sumus: we are; 1st person plural present active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fūi, *futūrus*
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fūi, *futūrus*
 supputantur: they are computed; 3rd person plural present
 passive from *supputō*, *supputāre*, *supputāvī*, *supputātus*
 trēs: three; plural common nominative from *trēs* -es -ia, *tertius*
 -a -um, *terti* -ae -a, *tert*
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vēnērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 veniō, *venīre*, *vēni*, *ventus*
 vīgintī: 20

17 Aliud experīmentum invēnī dē istō Brūtō ex veteribus¹ librīs veterum nostrōrum. Trēs filiī Noē dīvīsērunt orbem in trēs partēs post dīluvium². Sem in Asiā, Cham in Āfricā, Iafeth in Eurōpā dīlātāvērunt terminōs suōs. Prīmus homō venit ad Eurōpam dē genere Iafeth Alānus cum tribus filiīs suīs, quōrum nōmina sunt Hessitīō, Armenōn, Negue. Hessitīō autem habuit filiōs quattuor: hī sunt Francus, Rōmānus, Brittō, Albānus. Armenon autem habuit quīnque filiōs: Gothus, Valagothus, Gebidus, Burgundus, Longobardus. Negue autem habuit trēs filiōs: Vandalus, Saxō, Boguarus. Ab Hisitīōne autem ortae sunt quattuor gentēs Francī, Latīnī, Albānī et Brittī. Ab Armēnōne autem quīnque: Gothī, Valagothī, Gebidī, Burgundī, Longobardī. Ā Neguīō vērō quattuor Boguārii, Vandalī, Saxonēs et Turingī. Istaē autem gentēs subdivīsae sunt per tōtam Eurōpam. Alānus autem, ut aiunt, filius fuit Fetebir, filiī Ougomun, filiī Thōi, filiī Boib, filiī Simeōn, filiī Mair, filiī Ethach, filiī Aurthach, filiī Echthet, filiī Oth, filiī Abir, filiī Ra, filiī Ezra, filiī Izrau, filiī Baath, filiī Iobaath, filiī Iovan, filiī Iafeth, filiī Noe, filiī Lamech, filiī Matusalae, filiī Enoch, filiī Iareth, filiī Malalehēl, filiī Cainan, filiī Ēnōs, filiī Seth, filiī Adam, filiī deī vīvī. Hanc perītiām³ invēnī ex trāditiōne veterum.

¹*I found another account of this Brutus in the old books of our elders.*

²The flood referred to here is the global flood described in Genesis, after which Noah repopulated the earth. The genealogies in this page are put together from different sources. Some of the names can be found in the Table of Nations in Genesis 10. Others, specifically the line from Japheth to Alanus, can be found in a document called the Frankish Table of Nations. Unfortunately, we no longer have access to any other sources (the 'books of the elders') that the author used.

³*This account I found out of the tradition of the elders.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 Abir: Abir, son of Ra
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Adam: Adam, the first man
 Africā: Africa; singular feminine ablative from Africa, Africæ
 āiunt: they say; 3rd person plural present active from aio, - -
 Alānus: the descendant of Japheth who first settled Europe.
 Albānī: the Albānī, an Illyrian tribe
 Albānus: son of Hessitīō, father of the Albānī
 aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 Armenon: Armenon, son of Alānus
 Asiā: Asia, Asia Minor; singular feminine ablative from Asia, Asiae
 Aurthach: Aurthach, son of Echthet
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Baath: Baath, son of Jobaath
 Boguarii: probably the Bavarians
 Boguarus: Boguarus, son of Negue
 Boib: Boib, son of Simeon
 Britti: the Britons
 Brittō: Brittō, son of Hessitīō, father of the Britons
 Brūtō: Brutus; singular masculine ablative from Brūtus, Brūti
 Burgundi: the Burgundians
 Burgundus: Burgundus, son of Armenon, father of the Burgundians
 Cainan: Kenan, son of Enosh
 Cham: Ham, the son of Noah who fathered the Africans
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 Dei: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 dīlātāverunt: they expanded; 3rd person plural perfect active from dilātō, dilātāre, dilātāvī, dilātātūs
 diluvium: flood, destruction; singular neuter accusative from diluvium, diluvii
 dīvisae: having been divided; plural feminine nominative perfect passive participle from dividō, dīvidere, dīvisī, dīvisus
 dīvisērunt: they divided; 3rd person plural perfect active from dividō, dīvidere, dīvisī, dīvisus
 Echthet: Echthet, son of Oth
 Enoch: Enoch, son of Jared
 Enos: Enosh, son of Seth
 et: and
 Ethach: Ethach, son of Aurthach
 Eurōpā: Europe; singular feminine ablative from Eurōpa, Eurōpae
 Eurōpam: Europe; singular feminine accusative from Eurōpa, Eurōpae
 ex: out of, from
 experimentum: account, experience; singular neuter accusative from experimentum, experimenti
 Ezra: Ezra, son of Izrau
 Fetebir: Fetebir, son of Ougomun
 filī: sons; singular masculine genitive from filius, filī
 filiū: sons; plural masculine ablative from filius, filī
 filiōs: sons; plural masculine accusative from filius, filī
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, filī
 Franci: the Franks
 Francus: Francus, son of Hessitīō, father of the Franks
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus
 Gebidi: the Gepids, an eastern Germanic tribe
 Gebidus: Gebidus, son of Armenon, father of the Gepids
 genere: offspring; singular neuter ablative from genus, generis
 gentēs: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine nominative from gēns, gentis
 Gothi: Goths; plural masculine nominative from Gothus, Gothī
 Gothus: Gothus, son of Armenon, father of the Goths
 habuit: he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from habeō, habēre, habūi, habitus
 hanc: this; singular feminine accusative of hic, haec, hoc
 Hessitīō: Hessitīō, son of Alānus
 Hisitīōne: Hessitīō, son of Alānus (ablative case)
 hī: to these; plural masculine nominative of hic, haec, hoc
 homō: person; singular masculine nominative from homō, hominis
 Iafeth: Japheth, the son of Noah who fathered the Europeans
 Iareth: Jared, son of Mahalalel
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 invēni: I found; 2nd person singular present active imperative from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 Iobaath: Jobaath, son of Javan
 Iovan: Javan, son of Japheth
 istae: those; plural feminine nominative from iste, ista, istud
 istō: that; singular masculine ablative from iste, ista, istud
 Izrau: Izrau, son of Baath
 Lamech: Lamech, son of Methusaleh
 Latinī: the Latins
 librīs: books; plural feminine ablative from liber, librī

Longobardī: the Lombards
 Longobardus: Longobardus, son of Armenon, father of the Lombards
 Mair: Mair, son of Ethach
 Malalehel: Malahel, son of Kenan
 Matusalae: Methuselah, son of Enoch
 Negue: Negue, son of Alānus
 Neguīō: Negue, son of Alānus (ablative)
 Noē: Noah, who repopulated the earth after the Flood (genitive case)
 nōmina: names; plural neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
 nostrōrum: our
 orbem: world, sphere; singular masculine accusative from orbis, orbis
 ortae + sunt = rose up;
 Oth: Oth, son of Abir
 Ougomun: Ougomun, son of Thōi
 partēs: parts; plural feminine nominative from pars, partis
 per: through
 peritiam: experience, account; singular feminine accusative from peritia, peritiae
 post: behind, after, since
 primus: first; singular masculine nominative from primus, prima, primum
 quattuor: 4
 quinque: five
 quōrum: of whom; plural masc or neut. genitive of quis
 Ra: Ra, son of Ezra
 Rōmānus: Rōmānus, son of Hessitīō, father of the Latins
 Saxō: Saxō, son of Negue, father of the Saxons
 Saxonēs: The Saxons
 Sem: Shem, the son of Noah who fathered the Semitic peoples
 Seth: Seth, son of Adam
 Simeon: Simeon, son of Mair
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus
 suōs: their; plural accusative of suus
 terminōs: boundaries; plural masculine accusative from terminus, terminī
 Thōi: Thōi, son of Boib
 tōtam: whole, total; singular feminine accusative from tōtus, tōta, tōtūm (gen.-ius)
 trādītiōne: surrender, delivering up; singular feminine ablative from trādītiō, trādītiōnis
 trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 Turingi: the Thuringians
 ut: so that
 Valagothī: likely the Visigoths
 Valagothus: Valagothus, son of Armenon, likely father of the Visigoths
 Vandali: the Vandals
 Vandalus: Vandalus, son of Negue, father of the Vandals
 vénit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 vērō: truly, even so, still
 veteribus: old; plural ablative from vetus, veteris (gen.), veterior -or -us, veterīrimus -a -um
 veterum: of old; plural genitive from vetus, veteris (gen.), veterīrimus -a -um
 vīvī: living; singular masculine genitive from vīvus, vīva, vīvum

18 Quī incolae¹ in prīmō fuērunt Britanniae Brittōnēs ā Brūtō. Brūtus filius Hisitōnis, Hisition Alāneī, Alāneus² filius Reae Silviae, Rea Silvia filia Numā Pampilii, filiī Ascaniī; Ascanius filius Aenēae, filiī Anchīsae, filiī Trōī, filiī Dardanī, filiī Flise, filiī Iuvānī, filiī Iafeth. Iafeth vērō habuit septem filiōs. Prīmus Gomer, ā quō Gallī; secundus Magog, ā quō Scythās et Gothōs; tertius Madāī, ā quō Mēdōs; quārtus Iuvān, ā quō Graecī; quīntus Tubal, ā quō Hibērei et Hispānī et Italī; sextus Mosoch, ā quō Cappadocēs; septimus Tirās, ā quō Tracēs. Hī sunt filiī Iafeth filiī Noe filiī Lamech.

Et redeam³ nunc ad id, dē quō dīgressus sum.

¹The ones dwelling first in Britain were the Britons from Brutus.

²Note that this genealogy of Alānus differs from the one given on the previous page, a fact which the author noted.

³And let me now return to that, from which I digressed. redeam is a iussive subjunctive.

ā: from, out of, by, since	Troī: of Troius, the father of the Trojans
ad: to, towards, at, according to	Tubal: Tubal, son of Japheth, father of the Iberians, Hispanics, and Italians
Aeneas: of Aeneas, Trojan prince and legendary founder of Alba Longa, birthplace of Romulus and Remus (genitive case)Alānei: of Alāneus, son of Rea Silvia	vērō: truly, even so, still
Alāneus: of Alāneus	
Archisae: Anchises, father of Aeneus	
Ascaniū: of Ascanius, the son of Aeneus	
Ascanius: Ascanius, legendary king of Alba Longa, son of Aeneas (ablative or dative case)	
Brittanniae: in Britain (locative case)	
Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from Brittō, Brittōnis	
Brūtō: Brutus; singular masculine ablative from Brūtus, Brūti	
Brūtus: Brutus; singular masculine nominative from Brūtus, Brūti	
Cappadoces: the Cappadocians	
Dardani: of Dardanus, father of the Trojans	
dē: of, from, away from, down from	
digressus sum = I digressed; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from digredior, digredi, digressus sum	
et: and	
filia: daughter; singular feminine nominative from filia, filiae	
filii: sons; singular masculine genitive from filius, fili	
filīos: sons; plural masculine accusative from filius, fili	
filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili	
Flise: of Flis (?) the son of Juvan	
fuērunt: they were; 3rd person plural perfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus	
Galli: Gauls; plural masculine nominative from Gallus, Galli	
Gomer: Gomer, son of Japheth	
Gothōs: Goth; (tribe of Northern Germany); plural masculine accusative from Gothus, Gothi	
Graeci: Greek; the Greeks (pl.); singular masculine genitive from Graecus, Graeci	
habuit: he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus	
hī: these; plural masculine nominative of hic, haec, hoc	
Hiberei: the Iberians	
Hispāni: Hispanics; plural masculine nominative from Hispanus, Hispana, Hispanum	
Hisition: Hisition, son of Alāneus, father of Brūtus	
Hisitionis: of Hisition, son of Alāneus, father of Brūtus	
Iafeth: Japheth, father of the Europeans	
id: it	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
incolae: inhabitants; singular common genitive from incola, incolae	
Italī: Italian; plural masculine nominative from Italus, Itali	
Iuvan: Juvan, son of Japheth	
Iuvani: of Juvan, son of Japheth	
Lamech: Lamech, father of Noah	
Madāi: of Madāus, son of Japeth, father of the Medes	
Magog: Magog, son of Japeth, father of the Scythians and Goths	
Medos: the Medes	
Mosoch: Mosoch, son of Japheth, father of the Cappadocians	
Noe: of Noah, who repopulated the earth after the Flood	
Numā: Numā Pampiliū, son of Ascanius	
nunc: now	
Pampiliū: Numā Pampiliū, son of Ascanius	
prīmō: first; singular masculine ablative from prīmus, prīma, prīmum	
prīmus: first; singular masculine nominative from prīmus, prīma, prīmum	
quārtus: fourth	
qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis	
quintus: fifth	
quō: what; singular ablative of quis	
Rea: Rea Silvia, daughter of Numā Pampiliū	
Reae: of Rea Silvia, daughter of Numā Pampiliū	
redeam: I return; 1st person singular present active subjunctive from redeō, redire, redivi(i), reditus	
Scythās: the Scythians	
secundus: second; singular masculine nominative from duo -ae o, secundus -a -um, bini -ae -a, bis	
septem: seven	
septimus: seventh	
sextus: sixth	
Silvia: Rea Silvia, daughter of Numā Pampiliū	
Silviae: of Rea Silvia, daughter of Numā Pampiliū	
sum: I am; 1st person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	
sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	
tertius: third; singular masculine nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter	
Tirās: Tirās, father of the Thracians	
Tracēs: Thracians;	

19 Rōmānī autem, dum acciperent dominium tōtīus mundī, ac Brittannōs mīsērunt lēgātōs, ut obsidēs et cēnsum acciperent ab illīs, sīcut accipiēbant ab ūniversīs regiōnibus et īsulīs. Brittannī autem, cum essent¹ tyrannī et tumidī, lēgātiōnem Rōmānōrum contempsērunt. Tunc Iūlius Caesar, cum accēpisset singulāre imperium pīmus et obtinuisset, īrātus est valdē et vēnit ad Brittanniam cum sexāgintā ciulīs et tenuit in ūstium Tamesis, in quō naufragium perpessae² sunt nāvēs illīus, dum ipse pugnābat apud Dolobellum³, quī erat prōcōnsul rēgī Brittannīcō, quī et ipse Bellīnus vocābātur, et filius erat Minocannī, quī occupāvit omnēs īsulās Tyrrēnī⁴ maris et Iūlius reversus est sine victōriā caesīs mīlitibus et frāctīs nāvibus.

¹*The Britons, however, having been (filled) of tyranny and pride, contemned the embassy of the Romans. essent is used because it is a cum circumstantial clause.*

²*In which his ships endured shipwreck.*

³*When he was fighting with Dolobellus, who was proconsul to the Brittanic king.*

⁴*Who occupied all the islands of the Tyrrhenian Sea.* The author may have been referring to a different sea, as there is no record (besides this) of a British king occupying islands in the Tyrrhenian Sea, which is just off the western coast of Italy.

ab: from, out of, by, since	reversus: reversus + est = he returned
ac: and	Rōmāni: Romans
accēpisset: he had received; 3rd person singular pluperfect active subjunctive from accipió, accipere, accépi, acceptus	Rōmānōrum: Romans; plural masculine genitive from Rōmānūs, -a -um
accipēre: they received; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from accipió, accipere, accépi, acceptus	sexāgintā: sixty
accipiēbant: they were receiving, they were accepting; 3rd person plural imperfect active from accipió, accipere, accépi, acceptus	sicut: as, same as, like
ad: to, towards, at, according to	sine: without
apud: at, by, near, with	singulāre: solitary, peerless; singular neuter accusative from singulāris, singulāris, singulāre
autem: but, however, moreover	Tamesis: of the Thames river
Bellinus: a British king, the son of Minocannus	tenuit: he held, he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentus
Brittanni: Britons	tōtius: of the whole; singular genitive from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
Brittanniam: Britain (accusative case)	tumidi: swollen, pompous; singular masculine genitive from tumidus, tumida, tumidum
Britannicō: Britannic (dative case)	tunc: then
Brittannōs: Britons (accusative case)	tyranni: tyrants; singular masculine genitive from tyrannus, tyrannī
Caesar: Caesar; singular masculine nominative from Caesar, Caesars	Tyrrēni: of the Tyrrhenian. They Tyrrhenian Sea lies off the west coast of Italy
caēsis: slaughter; plural ablative perfect passive participle from caedo, caedere, caecidi, caesus	ūniversis: whole, entire; plural ablative from ūniversus, ūniversa, ūniversum
cēnsum: census; singular masculine accusative from cēnsus, cēnsūs	ut: so that
ciulīs: longship; plural feminine ablative variant spelling from ceola, ceolae	valdē: very
contempserunt: they contemned, they held in contempt; 3rd person plural perfect active from contemnō, contemnere, contempsi, contemptus	vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēni, ventus
cum: with	victōria: victory; singular feminine ablative from victōria, victōriæ
Dolobellum: Dolobellus (?) British proconsul	vocābātur: he was called; 3rd person singular imperfect passive from vocō, vocāre, vocātus
dominium: dominion; singular neuter accusative from dominium, dominii	
dum: while, as long as, until	
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus	
essent: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fui, futūrus	
et: and	
filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili	
frāctis: having been broken; plural ablative perfect passive participle from frangō, frangere, frēgi, frāctus	
illīs: those; plural ablative from ille, illa, illud	
illīus: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud	
imperīum: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter nominative from imperium, imperi(i)	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
īsulās: islands; plural feminine accusative from īsula, īsulae	
īsulīs: islands; plural feminine ablative from īsula, īsulae	
ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum	
īrātus: angry, singular masculine nominative from īrātus, -a -um	
Iūlius: Julius; singular masculine nominative from Julius, Jūli	
lēgātōnēm: legate, embassy; singular feminine accusative from lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis	
lēgātōs: legate, ambassador; plural masculine accusative from lēgātus, lēgātī	
marīs: sea; singular neuter genitive from mare, maris	
mīlitibūs: soldiers; plural masculine ablative from mīles, mīlitis	
Minocannī: Minocannus, a British king	
mīsērunt: they sent; 3rd person plural perfect active from mittō, mittere, mīsi, missus	
mundī: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundī	
naufragīum: shipwreck; singular neuter accusative from naufragium, naufragīi	
nāvēs: boats; plural feminine nominative from nāvis, nāvis	
nāvībus: boats; plural feminine ablative from nāvis, nāvis	
obsidēs: hostages; plural masculine accusative from obses, obsidis	
obtinissēt: he had obtained; 3rd person singular pluperfect active subjunctive from obtineō, obtinēre, obtinul, obtentus	
occupāvīt: he seized, attacked; 3rd person singular perfect active from occupo, occupare, occupavi, occupatus	
omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne	
ōstīum: mouth; singular neuter nominative from ōstium, ōstīi	
perpessae: perpessae sunt = they endured; plural feminine nominative perfect participle from perpētior, perpētī, perpessus	
prīmus: first; singular masculine nominative from prīmus, prima, prīmum	
prōcōnsul: proconsul, military commander; singular masculine nominative from prōcōnsul, prōcōnsulīs	
pugnābat: he was fighting; 3rd person singular imperfect active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus	
quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis	
quō: what; singular ablative of quis	
rēgī: king; singular masculine dative from rēx, rēgis	
rēgōnībus: regions; plural feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis	

20 Et iterum post spatium trium annōrum vēnit cum magnō exercitū trecentīsque ciūlīs et pervēnit usque ad ōstium flūminis, quod vocātur Tamesis. Et ibī iniērunt bellum et multī cecidērunt dē equīs mīlitibusque suīs, quia suprā¹ dictus prōcōnsul posuerat sudēs ferreōs et sēmen² bellicōsum, id est Cetilou³, in vada flūminis. Discrīmen⁴ magnum fuit mīlitibus Rōmānōrum haec ars invīsibilis, et discessērunt sine pāce in illā vice. Gestum est bellum tertīō iuxtā locum, quī dīcitur Trinovantum. Et accēpit Iūlius imperium Brittannicae gentis 47 annīs ante nātīvitātem Chrīstī, ab initiō autem mundī 5215.

¹*The above-stated proconsul.*

²The *war-like seed* most likely refers to caltrops, which are small, spiked devices designed to be scattered like seed and always have a spike facing up. This is the interpretation taken in “Unpublished Geraldine Documents: The Whyte Knight.” The Journal of the Royal Historical and Archaeological Association of Ireland 5, no. 50 (1882): 640-730. <http://www.jstor.org/stable/25506830>. See also below footnote.

³This is a likely a Welsh word used to clarify what *sēmen bellicōsum* means. Rebecca Thomas glosses it as "battle-seed" (Thomas, Rebecca. History and Identity in Early Medieval Wales. Boydell & Brewer, 2022. <https://doi.org/10.2307/j.ctv24cns98>.) Homer Nearing relates three different interpretations: (1) that it means chausses-trap (French for caltrop), (2) that it refers to British warriors, not caltrops, or (3) that *cetilou* is derived from coethawl (stake) (Nearing, Homer. “The Legend of Julius Caesar’s British Conquest.” PMLA 64, no. 4 (1949): 889-929. <https://doi.org/10.2307/459639>.)

⁴*This invisible art was a great danger to the soldiers of the Romans.*

ab: from, out of, by, since	sēmen: seed; singular neuter nominative from sēmen, sēminis
accēpit: he received, he took; 3rd person singular perfect active from accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus	sine: without
ad: to, towards, at, according to	spatiū: space; singular neuter accusative from spatiū, spatīi
annī: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī	sudēs: stakes, logs; plural masculine accusative from sudis,
annōrum: of years; plural masculine genitive from annus, annī	sudis
ante: before, in front, forwards	suis: their; plural ablative of suus
ars: art, skill; singular feminine nominative from ars, artis	suprā: above, beyond, before, over
autem: but, however, moreover	Tamesis: Thames river
bellicōsum: warlike; singular neuter nominative from bellicōsus,	tertiō: third; singular masculine ablative from trēs -es -ia,
bellicōsa -um, bellicōsior -or -us, bellicōsissimus -a -um	tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative from bellum,	trecentī: three hundred; plural masculine ablative from
bellī	trecentī -ae -a, trecentesimus -a -um, trecenī -ae -a,
Brittannīcae: of the Britannic (genitive case)	trecentie (n)s
cedidērunt: they fell; 3rd person plural perfect active from cadō, triū: three; plural genitive from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um,	Trinovantū: the place of a battle
cadere, cecidī, cāsus	terni -ae -a, ter
Cetilou: probably a Welsh term meaning caltrop	ūsque: until, all the way, up until
Christi: anointed one, Christ; singular masculine genitive from	vāda: shallows; plural neuter accusative from vadum, vādi
Christus, Christī	vēnit: he came, 3rd person singular present active from veniō,
ciulīs: longship; plural feminine ablative variant spelling from	venire, vēni, ventus
ceola, ceolae	vice: time, instance, turn; singular feminine ablative from vicis,
cum: with	vicis
dē: of, from, away from, down from	vocātūr: is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
dicitur: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from dicō,	vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātūs
dicere, dixī, dictus	
dictus: having been said; singular masculine nominative perfect	
passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus	
discessērunt: they departed; 3rd person plural perfect active	
from discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessus	
discrimen: danger, risk; singular neuter nominative from	
discrimen, discriminis	
equīs: horses; plural masculine ablative from equus, equī	
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,	
fuī, futūrus	
et: and	
exercitū: army; singular neuter ablative from exerceo, exercere,	
exercui, exercitus	
ferreōs: made of iron; plural masculine accusative from ferreus,	
ferrea, ferreum	
flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from flūmen, flūminis	
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse,	
fuī, futūrus	
gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive	
from gēns, gentis	
gestum: gestum est = it was carried out; singular neuter	
nominative perfect passive participle from	
haec: this, these; singular feminine nominative or plural neuter	
nom. or acc. of hic, haec, hoc	
ibi: there, then	
id: it	
illa: that; singular feminine nominative from ille, illa, illud	
imperium: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter	
nominative from imperium, imperi(i)	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
initiō: beginning, entrance; singular neuter ablative from	
initium, initiī	
iniērunt: they entered; 3rd person plural perfect active from	
ineō, inīre, inīvī(ii), initus	
invīsibilis: invisible; singular feminine nominative from	
invīsibilis, invisible	
iterum: again	
Iūlius: Julius; singular masculine nominative from Julius, Juli	
iuxtā: near, nearly	
locum: place; singular masculine accusative from locus, locī	
māgnō: large; singular masculine ablative from māgnus, māgna	
-um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um	
māgnūm: large; singular neuter nominative from māgnus,	
māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um	
mīlitibus: soldiers; plural masculine ablative from mīles, mīlitis	
multī: many; plural masculine nominative from multus, multa	
-um, - plūrimus -a -um	
mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundī	
nātīvitātem: birth, nativity; singular feminine accusative from	
nātīvitās, nātīvitās	
ōstium: mouth (of a river); singular neuter nominative from	
ōstium, ōstii	
pāce: peace; singular feminine ablative from pāx, pācis	
pervenit: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from	
perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventus	
post: behind, after, since	
posuerat: he had put; 3rd person singular pluperfect active	
from pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus	
prōcōnsul: proconsul, military commander; singular masculine	
nominative from prōcōnsul, prōcōnsulis	
quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis	
quia: because	
quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui	
Rōmānōrum: Romans; plural masculine genitive from Rōmānūs,	
-a -um	

Iūlius igitur p̄imus in Brittanniam p̄vēnit et rēnum et gentem tenuit, et in honōrem illīus Quīntīlem mēnsem Iūlium dēbēre¹ Rōmānī dēcrēvērunt vocārī. Et īdibus Mārtiīs Gāius Iūlius Caesar in cūriā occīditur, tenente Octāviānō Augustō monarchiam tōtīus mundī, et cēnsum ā Brittanniā ipse sōlus accēpit, ut Virgilius² ait: Purpurea intextī tollant aulaea Britannī.

¹*And in his honor the Romans decreed the month Quintilis should be called July.* Quintilis was the fifth month of the year (which used to start in March, making July the fifth month) and was renamed in honor of Julius Caesar.

²*As Virgil says: they raise the purple curtains embroidered with Britons.* This is a quote from Georgics 3:25. It appears that the idea is that the Britons have been "woven in" to the regal story of the Roman empire; in fact, that has been what the author has been doing in the last several sections with genealogies linking the Britons to the Trojans through Brutus.

ā: from, out of, by, since
accēpit: he received, he grasped; 3rd person singular perfect
active from accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus
āit: he said; 3rd person singular present active from aio, - -
Augustō: Augustus; (title of Octavius Caesar, Emperor, 27 BC-14
AD); singular masculine ablative from Augustus, Augusti
aulaea: curtains; plural neuter accusative from aulaeum, aulaeī
Britanni: Britons (usu, pl.); plural masculine nominative from
 Britannus, Britanni
Britannia: Britain
Britanniam: Britain (accusative case)
Caesar: Caesar; singular masculine nominative from Caesar,
 Caesaris
cēnsum: tribute, census; singular masculine accusative from
 cēnsus, cēnsūs
cūriā: court, council, senate; singular feminine ablative from
 cūria, cūriæ
dēbēre: to owe, to ought; present infinitive from dēbeō, dēbēre,
 dēbūi, dēbitus
dēcrevērunt: they decreed; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus
et: and
Gāius: Gāius (Iūlius Caesar)
gentem: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from
 gēns, gentis
honorem: honor; singular masculine accusative from honor,
 honōris
īdibus: Ides; plural feminine ablative from Idus, Idus
igitur: therefore
illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
intexti: having been embroidered, woven in; singular masculine
 genitive perfect passive participle from intexo, intexere,
 intexui, intextus
ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
Iūlium: Julius; (Roman gens name); (C. ~ Caesar 102-44 BC);
 singular masculine accusative from Julius, Juli
Iūlius: Julius; singular masculine nominative from Julius, Juli
Mārtiūs: March (matches īdibus to mean 'Ides of March'); plural
 ablative from Martius, Martia, Martium
mēnsem: month; singular masculine accusative from mēnsis,
 mēnsis
monarchiam: monarchy; singular feminine accusative from
 monarchia, monarchiae
mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundī
occiditūr: he is killed; 3rd person singular present passive from
 occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus
Octāviānō: Octavius; singular masculine ablative from Octavius,
 Octaviī
pervēnit: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, peruentus
prīmus: first; singular masculine nominative from prīmus,
 prīma, prīmum
purpūrea: purple; plural neuter accusative from purpūreus,
 purpūrea, purpūreum
Quintilem: July; renamed Julius in 44 BC; singular common
 accusative from Quintilis, Quintilis, Quintile
rēgnūm: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēgnūm,
 rēgnī
Rōmānī: Romans
sōlus: alone; singular masculine nominative from sōlus, sōla,
 sōlum (gen -ius)
tenente: holding; singular ablative present participle from
 teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus
tenuit: he held, he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus
tollant: they lift up; 3rd person plural present active subjunctive
 from tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātus
tōtius: of the whole; singular genitive from tōtus, tōta, tōtum
 (gen -ius)
ut: so that
Virgilius: Virgil
vocārī: to be called; present passive infinitive from vocō, vocāre,
 vocāvī, vocātus

21 Secundus post hunc Claudius imperātor vēnit et in Brittanniā imperāvit annīs quadrāgintā octo post adventum Chrīstī et strāgem et bellum fēcit magnum nōn absque¹ dētrīmentō mīlitum, tamen victor fuit in Brittanniā. Et posteā cum ciūlīs perrēxit ad Orcadēs īsulās et subiēcit sibi² et fēcit eās tribūtāriās. In tempore illīus quiēvit³ dare cēnsum Rōmānīs ā Brittanniā, sed Brittannīcīs imperātōribus redditum est. Rēgnāvit annīs 13 mēnsibus 8. Cuius monumentum in Mogantīā apud Longobardōs ostenditur: dum ad Rōmam ībat, ibī dēfūctus⁴ est.

22 Post 168 annōs post adventum Chrīstī, Lūcius Brittannicus rēx cum omnibus rēgulīs tōtīus Britannicae gentis baptismum suscēpit missā⁵ lēgātiōne ab imperātōre Rōmānōrum et ā Pāpā Rōmānō Eucharistō.

¹And not without harm of the soliders. This means that Claudius's soldiers got hurt during their battle.

²And subjected (them) to himself.

³In that time he ceased to give tribute to the Romans from the British, but returned it to the British rulers.

⁴There he died.

⁵After 168 years after the advent of Christ, Lūcius the British king with all the rulers of all of the people of Britain undertook baptism, a delegation having been sent from the emperor of the Romans and from the Roman Pope Eucharistus. The name of the Pope given as Eucharistus is almost certainly a scribal error and should refer to Pope Eleutherius (see Mommsen's critical text, page 115, note 12). missā ... Eucharistō is an ablative absolute.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 abs: from, out of, by, since
 absque: without
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adventum: arrival, advent; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from *adveniō*, *advenire*, *advēnī*, *adventus*
 annī: years; plural masculine ablative from *annus*, *annī*
 annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from *annus*, *annī*
 apud: at, by, near
 baptismum: baptism; singular neuter accusative from *baptismum*, *baptismi*
 bellum: battle, war; singular neuter accusative from *bellum*, *bellī*
 Brittannia: Britain
 Brittanicæ: of the Brittanic (genitive case)
 Brittanicis: Brittanic (ablative case)
 Brittanicus: British
 cēnum: census, tribute; singular masculine accusative from *cēnus*, *cēnsus*
 Chrīstī: of Christ; singular masculine genitive from *Chrīstus*, *Chrīsti*
 ciulīs: longships; plural feminine ablative variant spelling from *ceola*, *ceolae*
 Claudius: Claudius, Roman emprorer; singular masculine nominative from *Claudius*, *Claudi*
 cuius: whose; singular genitive from *quis*
 cum: with
 dare: to give; present infinitive from *dō*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datus*
 dēfunctus: dēfunctus est = he died; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from *defungor*, *defungi*, *dēfunctus sum*
 dētrīmentō: harm, detriment; singular neuter ablative from *dētrīmentum*, *dētrīmentū*
 dum: while
 eās: their; plural feminine accusative from *is*, *ea*, *id*
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*
 et: and
 Eucharisto: Pope Eleutherius, see footnote 5 on the facing page.
 fecit: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from *facio*, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factus*
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*
 gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive from *gēns*, *gentis*
 hunc: this; singular masculine accusative of *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*
 ībat: he was going; 3rd person singular imperfect active from *eo*, *ire*, *īvi(ii)*, *itus*
 ibi: there, then
 illius: of that; singular genitive from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 imperātor: commander; singular masculine nominative from *imperātor*, *imperātōris*
 imperātōre: commander; singular masculine ablative from *imperātor*, *imperātōris*
 imperātōribus: commanders; plural masculine ablative from *imperātor*, *imperātōris*
 imperāvit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect active from *imperō*, *imperāre*, *imperāvī*, *imperātus*
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 īsulās: islands; plural feminine accusative from *īsula*, *īsulae*
 lēgātiōne: delegation, legate, embassy; singular feminine ablative from *lēgātiō*, *lēgātiōnis*
 Longobardōs: Lombards
 Lūcius: Lucius, a British king; singular masculine nominative from *Lucius*, *Luci*
 māgnūm: large; singular neuter accusative from *māgnus*, *māgna* -um, *major* -or -us, *maximus* -a -um
 mēnsib⁹: months; plural masculine ablative from *mēnsis*, *mēnsis*
 mīlitum: of soldiers; plural masculine genitive from *mīles*, *mīlitis*
 missā: having been sent; singular feminine ablative perfect passive participle from *mittō*, *mittere*, *mīsī*, *missus*
 Mogantīā: Mogontiacum, modern-day Mainz, Germany
 monumentum: monument, memorial, tomb; singular neuter nominative from *monumentum*, *monumenti*
 nōn: not
 octō: 8; from *octo*, *octavus* -a -um, *octoni* -ae -a, *octie* (n)s
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from *omnis*, *omnis*, *omne*
 Orcades: The Orkney Isles, located off the northern coast of Scotland
 ostenditur: it is displayed; 3rd person singular present passive from *ostendo*, *ostendere*, *ostendi*, *ostensus*
 Pāpa: pope; singular masculine nominative from *Papa*, *Papae*
 perrēxit: he proceeded; 3rd person singular perfect active from *pergō*, *pergere*, *perrēxi*, *perrēctus*
 post: behind, after, since
 posteā: thereafter, later
 quadrāgintā: 40

23 Tertius fuit Sevērus, quī trānsfretāvit ad Brittannōs; ubi, ut receptās¹ prōvinciās ab incursiōne barbaricā faceret tūtiōrēs, mūrum et aggerem ā marī usque ad mare per lātitūdinem Brittanniae, id est per 132 mīlia passuum dēdūxit, et vocātur Brittannīcō sermōne Guaul. Proptereā iussit fierī inter Brittōnēs et Pictōs et Scottōs, quia Scottī ab occidente et Pictī ab aquilōne ūnanimiter pugnābant contrā Brittōnēs, nam et ipsī pācem inter sē habēbant; et nōn multō post intrā Brittanniam Sevērus moritur.

24 Quārtus fuit Karitius imperātor et tyrannus, quī et ipse in Brittanniam vēnit tyrannide. Quī proptereā tyrannus fuit prō occīsiōne Sevērī et cum omnibus ducibus Rōmānicae gentis, quī erant cum eō in Brittanniā, trānsverberāvit omnēs rēgulōs Brittannōrum et vindicāvit valdē Sevērum ab illīs et purpuram² Brittanniae occupāvit.

¹*So that the received provinces might be made safer from barbaric incursion.* *faceret* is subjunctive because of the *ut* clause.

²*And he occupied the royalty of Britain.* Here *purpuram* is an idiom for royalty.

ā: from, out of, by, since	from prōvinciā, prōvinciāe
ab: from, out of, by, since	pugnābant: they were fighting; 3rd person plural imperfect active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātūs
ad: to, towards, at, according to	from purpurā: purple (garment), royalty; singular feminine accusative from purpura, purpūrae
aggerem: bulwark, rampart; singular masculine accusative	quārtus: fourth
agger, aggeris	qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
aquilōne: north; singular masculine ablative from aquilō,	quia: because
aquilōnīs	receptās: having been received; plural feminine accusative
barbaricā: barbaric; plural neuter ablative from barbaricū,	perfect passive participle from recipiō, recipere, recēpī,
barbarici	receptus
Brittanniā: Britain (ablative case)	rēgulōs: princes; plural masculine accusative from rēgulus,
Brittanniāe: Britain (nominative plural or genitive singular case)	rēgulī
Brittanniām: Britain (accusative case)	Rōmānicāe: Romanic; singular feminine genitive from
Brittanniōcō: Britannic (ablative case)	Rōmānicus, Rōmānica, Rōmānicum
Brittanniōs: Britons (accusative case)	Scotti: Scots
Brittanniōrum: of the Britons	Scottōs: Scots
Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine	se: himself
accusative from Brittō, Brittōnīs	sermōne: speech; singular masculine ablative from sermō,
contrā: against, away from, facing	sermōnis
cum: with	Sevērō: of Sevērus, a Roman commander of Britain who was
dēdūxit: it stretched; 3rd person singular perfect active from	murdered.
dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxi, dēductus	Sevērum: Sevērus, a Roman commander of Britain who was
ducibūs: leaders; plural masculine ablative from dux, ducis	murdered.
eō: him; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id	Sevērus: Sevērus, a Roman commander of Britain who was
erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum,	murdered.
esse, fūi, futūrus	tertius: third; singular masculine nominative from trēs -es -ia,
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,	tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
fūi, futūrus	trānsfretāvit: he passed over the sea, ferried; 3rd person
et: and	singular perfect active from trānsfretō, trānsfretāre,
faceret: he did; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive	trānsfretāvī, trānsfretātūs
from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	trānsverberāvit: he pierced through; 3rd person singular
fieri: to happen, to occur; person present active from fiō, fieri,	perfect active from trānsverberō, trānsverberāre,
factus sum	trānsverberāvī, trānsverberātūs
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse,	tūtiōrēs: safer; plural common nominative from tūtus, tūta -um,
fūi, futūrus	tūtior -or -us, tūtissimus -a -um
gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive	tyrannide: tyranny; singular feminine ablative from tyrannis,
from gēns, gentis	tyrannīdīs
Guaul: the Welsh (?) name of the wall the Romans built across	tyrannus: tyrant; singular masculine nominative from tyrannus,
Britain. This is likely Hadrian's Wall, which stood 12 feet	tyrannī
tall and stretches 73 miles across northern England	ubi: where, when if
habēbant: they had; 3rd person plural imperfect active from	ūnanimiter: unanimously, harmoniously
habēo, habēre, habui, habitus	ūsque: until, all the way, up until
id: it	ut: so that
illis: those; plural ablative from ille, illa, illud	valdē: very
imperātor: commander; singular masculine nominative from	vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō,
imperātor, imperātoris	venire, vēnī, ventus
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	vindicāvit: he vindicated, avenged; 3rd person singular perfect
incursiōne: attack; singular feminine ablative from incursiō,	active from vindico, vindicāre, vindicāvī, vindicātūs
incursiōnis	vocātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
inter: between, among, during	vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātūs
intrā: within, between, during	
ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,	
ipsum	
ipsi: itself; sing. dative or plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa,	
ipsum	
iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō,	
iubēre, iussī, iussus	
Karitius: a Roman ruler of Britian, likely Marcus Aurelius	
Mausaeus Carausius	
lātitūdinem: breadth, width, latitude; singular feminine	
accusative from lātitūdō, lātitūdīnīs	
mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris	
marī: sea; singular neuter ablative from mare, maris	
milia: one thousand	
moritur: he dies; 3rd person singular present from morior, morī,	
mortuum	
multō: much, many; singular masculine ablative from multus,	
multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um	
mūrūm: wall; singular masculine accusative from mūrus, mūrī	
nam: yes, truly	
nōn: not	
occidente: west; singular masculine ablative from occidēns,	
occidentis	
occisiōne: massacre, slaughter, murder; singular feminine	
ablative from occisiō, occisiōnis	
occupāvit: he seized, attacked; 3rd person singular perfect	
active from occupo, occupare, occupavi, occupatus	
omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis,	
omnis, omne	
omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne	
pācem: peace; singular feminine accusative from pāx, pācis	
passuum: of steps, of paces, mīlia passuum = miles; plural	
masculine genitive from passus, passūs	
per: through	
Pictū: Picts, members of a Scottish tribe	
Pictōs: Picts, members of a Scottish tribe;	
post: behind, after, since	
prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of	
proptereā: because of, that's why	
prōvinciās: provinces, commands; plural feminine accusative	

25 Quīntus Cōstantīnus Cōstantīni magnī filius fuit et ibī moritur et sepulcrum illīus mōnstrātur iuxtā urbem, quae vocātur Cair Segeint, ut litterae, quae sunt in lapide tumulī, ostendunt. Et ipse sēmināvit¹ tria sēmina, id est aurī argentī, aerisque, in pavīmentō supradictae cīvitātis, ut nūllus pauper in eā habitāret umquam, et vocātur aliō nōmine Minmantōn.

26 Sextus Maximus imperātor rēgnāvit in Brittanniā. Ā tempore illīus cōsulēs esse² coepērunt et Caesarēs numquam appellatī sunt posteā. Et sānctus Martīnus in tempore illīus clāruit in virtūtibus et signīs et cum eō locūtus³ est.

¹And he himself sowed three seeds, that is of gold and of silver and of bronze, in the pavement of the above-said city, so that no poor man would ever live in it, and it is called by another name: Minmantōn. It's unclear what is meant by the seeds of precious metals.

²From his time consuls began to be and (they) were never called Caesars afterwards.

³And he spoke with him.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 aeris: of bronze; singular neuter genitive from *aes*, *aeris*
 aliō: other; singular masculine ablative from *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*
 appellāti: appellāti sunt = were called; plural masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from
 argentī: of silver; singular neuter genitive from *argentum*,
 argentī
 aurī: of gold; singular neuter genitive from *aurum*, *aurī*
 Brittānia: Britain
 Caesārēs: Caesars; plural masculine accusative from *Caesar*,
 Caesaris
 Cair: Cair Segeint, which is Segontium, a Roman fort in
 Gwynedd, North Wales
 cīvitatīs: city; singular feminine genitive from *cīvitas*, *cīvitatīs*
 clāruit: he became famous; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from *claresco*, *clarescere*, *clarui*, -
 coepērunt: they started; from *coepi*, *coepisse*, *coepi*, *coeptum*
 Cōstantīni: of Constantine; singular masculine genitive from
 Constantinus, Constantini
 Cōstantīnus: Constantinus, possibly Constantine II, perhaps
 conflated with Constantius Chlorus; singular masculine
 nominative from Constantinus, Constantini
 cōnsulēs: consuls; plural masculine nominative from *cōsul*,
 consulis
 cum: with
 eā: in it; singular feminine nominative or plural neuter nom. or
 acc. from *is*, *ea*, *id*
 eō: with him; singular masculine ablative from *is*, *ea*, *id*
 esse: to be
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fuī, *futūrus*
 et: and
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from *filius*, *fili*
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fuī, *futūrus*
 habitāret: he inhabited; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 subjunctive from *habitō*, *habitāre*, *habitāvi*, *habitātus*
 ibi: there, then
 id: it
 illius: of that; singular genitive from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 imperātor: commander; singular masculine nominative from
 imperātor, *imperātōris*
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from *ipse*, *ipsa*,
 ipsum
 iuxtā: near
 lapide: stone; singular masculine ablative from *lapis*, *lapidis*
 litterae: letters, literature; plural feminine nominative from
 littera, *litterae*
 locūtus: locūtus est = he spoke
 māgnī: large; singular masculine genitive from *māgnus*, *māgna*
 -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 Martinus: Saint Martin
 Maximus: Magnus Maximus, emperor of the western Roman
 empire from 383 to 388
 Minmanton: another name for Cair Segeint
 mōnstrātūr: it is demarcated; 3rd person singular present passive
 from *mōnstrō*, *mōnstrāre*, *mōnstrāvī*, *mōnstrātus*
 moritur: he dies; 3rd person singular present from *morior*, *morī*,
 mortuum
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from *nōmen*, *nōminis*
 nūllus: no, none, not any; singular masculine nominative from
 nūllus, *nūlla*, *nūlūm* (gen -ius)
 numquam: never
 ostendunt: they show; 3rd person plural present active from
 ostendo, *ostendere*, *ostendi*, *ostensus*
 pauper: poor man; singular nominative from *pauper*, *pauperis*
 (gen.), *pauperior* -or -us, *pauperrimus* -a -um
 pavimentō: floor, pavement, tiling; singular neuter ablative from
 pavimentum, *pavimenti*
 posteā: thereafter, later
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of *quis*
 Quīntus: fifth
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 rēgnō, *rēgnāre*, *rēgnāvī*, *rēgnātus*
 sānctus: holy, saint
 Segeint: Segontium, a Roman fort in Gwynedd, North Wales
 sēmina: seeds; plural neuter accusative from *sēmen*, *sēminis*
 sēmināvit: he planted; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 sēminō, *sēmināre*, *sēmināvī*, *sēminātus*
 sepulchrūm: grave; singular neuter nominative from
 sepulchrūm, *sepulchrī*
 sextus: sixth
 signī: signs, miracles; plural neuter ablative from *signum*, *signī*
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fuī, *futūrus*
 suprādictae: having been said above; singular feminine genitive
 perfect passive participle from *suprādicō*, *suprādicere*,
 suprādixī, *suprādictus*

tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from *tempus*,
 temporis
 tria: three
 tumulī: mound, hill; singular masculine genitive from *tumulus*,
 tumuli
 umquam: ever
 urbēm: city; singular feminine accusative from *urbs*, *urbis*
 ut: so that
 virtūtibus: virtues, manliness, power; plural feminine ablative
 from *virtūs*, *virtūtis*
 vocātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, *vocāre*, *vocātus*

27 Septimus imperātor rēgnāvit in Brittanniā Maximiānus. Ipse perrēxit cum omnibus mīlitibus Brittōnum ā Brittanniā et occīdit Grātiānum rēgem Rōmānōrum et imperium tenuit tōtius Eurōpae et nōluit dīmittere mīlēs, quī perrēxērunt cum eō, ad Brittanniam ad uxōrēs suās et ad filiōs suōs et ad possēsiōnēs suās, sed dēdit illīs multās regiōnēs ā stāgnō quod est super verticem Montis Iovis¹ usque ad cīvitātem, quae vocātur Cant Guic, et usque ad cumulum occidentālem, id est, Cruc Ochidient. Hī sunt Brittōnēs Armorīcī² et numquam reversī sunt hūc usque in hodiernum diem. Propter hoc Brittannia occupāta est ab extrāneīs gentibus et cīvēs expulsī sunt, usque dum Deus auxilium dederit illīs.

In veterī trāditiōne seniōrum nostrōrum septem imperātōrēs fuērunt ā Rōmānīs in Brittanniā: Rōmānī autem dīcunt novem. Octāvus fuit aliis Sevērus, quī aliquandō in Brittanniā manēbat, aliquandō ad Rōmam ībat et ibī dēfūnctus est. Nōnus fuit Cōstantius. Ipse rēgnāvit sexdecim annīs in Brittanniā et in sextodecīmō annō imperiī suī obiit in Brittanniā.

¹The place-names in this sentence are uncertain. Based on the next sentence, they are likely places in Brittany, a northern part of modern-day France that lies just across the English channel.

²These are the Britons of Armorica and they never returned here, even up until today.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliquod: some day
 alius: other; singular masculine nominative from *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*
 annis: years; plural masculine ablative from *annus*, *annī*
 anno: year; singular masculine ablative from *annus*, *annī*
 Armorīcī: of Armorica, modern-day Brittany
 autem: but, however, moreover
 auxilium: help, aid; singular neuter accusative from *auxilium*, *auxiliī*
 Brittanniā: in Britain (ablative case)
 Brittanniām: Britain (accusative case)
 Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from *Brittō*, *Brittōnīs*
 Brittōnum: Briton, inhabitant of Britain; (usu. pl.); plural masculine genitive from *Brittō*, *Brittōnīs*
 Cant Guic: an city, likely in modern-day Brittany
 cīvēs: citizens; plural common nominative from *cīvis*, *cīvis*
 cīvitātem: civilization; singular feminine accusative from *cīvitās*, *cīvitātīs*
 Cōnstantīus: Constantius
 Cruc Ochidient: a city, likely in modern-day Brittany
 cum: with
 cumulum: heap, pile; singular masculine accusative from *cumulus*, *cumuli*
 dederit: he will give; 3rd person singular perfect active subjunctive from *dō*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datu*s
 dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from *dō*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datu*s
 dēfūctus: dēfūctus est = he died; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from *defungor*, *defungi*, *defunctus* sum
 Deus: god; singular masculine nominative from *Deus*, *Dei*
 dīcunt: they say; 3rd person plural present active from *dīcō*, *dīcere*, *dīxi*, *dīctus*
 diem: day; singular common accusative from *diēs*, *diēi*
 dīmittere: to dismiss, to send away; present infinitive from *dīmittō*, *dīmittere*, *dīmisi*, *dīmissus*
 dum: while, as long as, until
 eō: in it, singular masculine ablative from *is*, *ea*, *id*
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*
 et: and
 Eurōpae: of Europe; singular feminine genitive from *Eurōpā*, *Eurōpae*
 expulsī: expulsī sunt = they were driven out; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from *expellō*, *expellere*, *expulī*, *expulsus*
 extrāneis: foreign; plural ablative from *extraneus*, *extranea*, *extraneum*
 filiōs: sons; plural masculine accusative from *filius*, *fili*
 fuērunt: they were; 3rd person plural perfect active from *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*
 gentibus: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine ablative from *gēns*, *gentis*
 Grātiānum: Grātiān, emperor of the Western Roman Empire from 367 to 383
 Guic: Cant Guic, a city, likely in modern-day Brittany
 hī: these; plural masculine nominative of *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*
 hōc: this; sing. masc. or neut. abl. of *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*
 hodiernum: today; singular neuter nominative from *hodiernus*, *hodierna*, *hodiernum*
 hūc: toward here
 ibāt: he was going; 3rd person singular imperfect active from *eo*, *ire*, *ivi*(ii), *itus*
 ibī: there, then
 id: it
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 imperātor: commander; singular masculine nominative from *imperātor*, *imperātōris*
 imperātōrēs: commander; plural masculine nominative from *imperātor*, *imperātōris*
 imperiū: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter genitive from *imperium*, *imperi(i)*
 imperium: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter nominative from *imperium*, *imperi(i)*
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 Iovis: Mount Jupiter, an unknown mountain possibly in Brittany
 ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*
 manēbat: he was remaining; 3rd person singular imperfect active from *maneō*, *manere*, *mānsi*, *mānus*
 Maximiānus: a ruler in Britain
 militēs: soldiers; plural masculine accusative from *mīlēs*, *mīlītis*
 militibus: soldiers; plural masculine ablative from *mīlēs*, *mīlītis*

montis: mountains; singular masculine genitive from *mōns*, *montis*
 multās: many; plural feminine accusative from *multus*, *multa* -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 nōluit: he didn't want; 3rd person singular perfect active from *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōlūi*, -
 nōnūs: 9th
 nostrōrum: our
 novem: nine;
 numquam: never
 obiit: he died; 3rd person singular perfect active from *obeo*, *obire*, *obiī*, *obitus*
 occidentālem: western; singular common accusative from *occidentālis*, *occidentālis*, *occidentāle*
 occīdit: he killed, 3rd person singular perfect from *occīdō*, *occidere*, *occīdi*, *occīsus*
 occupāta: having been seized; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from
 Ochidient: Cruc Ochidient, a city, likely in modern-day Brittany
 octāvus: eighth
 omnībus: all; plural ablative from *omnis*, *omnis*, *omne*
 perrēxūnt: they proceeded; 3rd person plural perfect active from *pergo*, *pergere*, *perrēxi*, *perrēctus*
 perrēxit: he proceeded; 3rd person singular perfect active from *pergō*, *pergere*, *perrēxi*, *perrēctus*
 possessiōnēs: properties; plural feminine accusative from *possessiō*, *possessiōnis*
 propter: because of, near
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of *quis*
 qui: who; plural masculine nominative of *quis*
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of *qui*
 rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from *rēx*, *rēgis*
 rēgiōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from *regiō*, *regiōnis*
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from *rēgnō*, *rēgnāre*, *rēgnāvī*, *rēgnātūs*
 reversi: reversi sunt = they returned
 Rōmā: Rome; singular feminine accusative from *Rōma*, *Rōmae*
 Rōmāni: Romans
 Rōmānīs: Romans; plural ablative from *Rōmānūs*, -a -um
 Rōmānōrum: Romans; plural masculine genitive from *Rōmānūs*, -a -um
 sed: but
 seniōrum: of the elders; plural genitive from *senex*, *senis* (gen.), *senior* -or -us, -
 septem: seven
 septimus: seventh
 Sevērus: Severus, a Roman commander
 sexdecim: sixteen
 sextodecimō: sixteenth
 stagnō: swamp, pool; singular neuter ablative from *stagnum*, *stagnī*
 suās: their; plural accusative feminine of *suus*
 suī: of him; singular or plural genitive of *se*
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*
 suōs: their; plural accusative of *suus*
 super: above, on top of
 tenuit: he held, he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from *teneō*, *tenēre*, *tenuī*, *tentus*
 tōtiūs: of the whole; singular genitive from *tōtus*, *tōta*, *tōtūm* (gen. -ius)
 trādītōne: tradition; singular feminine ablative from *trādītiō*, *trādītōnis*
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 uxorēs: wives; plural feminine accusative from *uxor*, *uxōris*
 verticēm: peak; singular masculine accusative from *vertex*, *verticis*
 veterī: old; singular ablative from *vetus*, *veteris* (gen.), *veterior* -or -us, *veterīm* -a -um
 vocātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from *vocō*, *vocāre*, *vocātūs*

28 Hūcusque regnavērunt Rōmānī apud Brittones 408 annīs. Brittōnēs autem dēiēcērunt rēgnum Rōmānōrum neque cēnsum dedērunt illīs neque rēgēs illōrum accēpērunt, ut rēgnārent super eōs, neque Rōmānī ausī¹ sunt, ut venīrent Britanniam ad rēgnandum amplius, quia ducēs illōrum Brittōnēs occīderant.

¹*Neither did the Romans dare to come to Britain to reign more, because the Britons killed their leaders.*

accēpērunt: they accepted, they received; 3rd person plural perfect active from accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
ad: to, towards, at, according to
amplius: more, ampler, larger; singular neuter nominative from amplus, ampla -um, amplior -or -us, amplissimus -a -um
annīs: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, anni
apud: at, by, near
ausī: ausī sunt = they dared; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from audeō, audēre, ausus
autem: but, however, moreover
Brittanniam: Britain (accusative case)
Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from Brittō, Brittōnis
cēnsum: tribute, census; singular masculine accusative from cēnsus, cēnsūs
dedērunt: they gave; 3rd person plural perfect active from dō, dare, dedū, datus
dēiēcērunt: they overthrew; 3rd person plural perfect active from dēiō, dēicere, dēiēci, dēiectus
ducēs: leaders; plural masculine accusative from dux, ducis
eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
hūcusque: up to this point
illīs: those; plural dative from ille, illa, illud
illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud
neque: not, not either
occiderant: they killed; 3rd person plural perfect from occīdō, occidere, occidī, occisus
quia: because
rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from rēx, rēgis
rēgnandum: reigning; singular neuter nominative future passive participle from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
rēgnārēt: they had reigned; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
regnavērunt: they reigned; 3rd person plural perfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
rēgnūm: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēgnūm, rēgni
Rōmānī: Romans
Rōmānōrum: Romans; plural masculine genitive from Rōmānūs, -a -um
super: above, on top of
ut: so that
venīrent: they came; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus

29 Iterum repetendus¹ est sermō dē Maximiānō tyrannō. Grātiānus cum frātre Valentiānō regnavit 6 annīs et Ambrosius Mediolānēnsis epīscopus clārus habētur in catholicōrum dogmate. Valentiānus cum Theodosiō rēgnāvit annīs 8. Synodus² Cōstantīnopolim colligitur ā 318 patribus, in quā omnēs haeresēs damnantur. Hieronymum tum presbyter Bethleem tōtō mundō clāruit. Dum Grātiānus imperium regēbat in tōtō mundō, in Brittanniā per sēditiōnem mīlitum Maximus imperātor factus est. Quī mox dum in Galliās trānsfretāret, Grātiānus, Parāssis³ Meroblaudis magistrī mīlitum prōditiōne, superātus est et fugiēns Lugdūnī captus atque occīsus est. Maximus Victōrem filium suum cōsortem fēcit. Martīnus Turonēnsis epīscopus in magnīs virtūtibus clāruit. Post multum intervāllum temporis ā Valentīnānō et Theodosiō cōsulibus, in tertīō ab Avvilevā lapide,⁴ spoliātus indūmentīs rēgiīs, sistitur et capite damnātur. Cuius filius Victor eōdem annō ab Argabaste comite interfectus est in Galliā.

¹Again the topic of Maximus the tyrant should be returned to. *repetendus* is a gerundive, giving it the sense of "should".

²The Synod in Constantinople is gathered from 318 fathers, in which all heresies are condemned. This refers to the first Council of Nicea in 325 AD. 318 bishops attended it, and this fact is often used to refer to the council. While the author states that all heresies were condemned, this is hyperbolic; the council mainly focused on affirming that the Son is of the same substance as the Father (and was not created, as the heresy of Arius maintained) and also on rejecting the Jewish calculation of Passover for the celebration of the Paschal Feast (Easter).

³Gratian, in Paris by the sedition of Merobaudes, captain of the soldiers, was overcome, and fleeing to Lyons was captured and killed. I added the commas after *Grātiānus* and *prōditiōne* to make the text easier to parse.

⁴At the third milestone from Aquileia, spoiling his royal garments, he (presumably Maximus) is stopped and beheaded. I added commas after *cōsulibus* and *lapide* to make the sentence easier to parse.

ā: from, out of, by, since	Mediolanensis: of Milan
ab: from, out of, by, since	Merobaudis: Flavius Merobaudes, a Roman army officer of
Ambrosius: St. Ambrose of Milan	Frankish origin who supported Magnus Maximus against
annīs: years; plural masculine ablative from <i>annus</i> , <i>annī</i>	Gratian (ablative case)
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from <i>annus</i> , <i>annī</i>	mīlitū: of soldiers; plural masculine genitive from <i>mīles</i> , <i>mīlitis</i>
Argabaste: Arbogast, a Roman officer of Frankish origin who	mox: soon
killed Victor, the son of Magnus Maximus (ablative case)	multum: many; singular neuter nominative from <i>multus</i> , <i>multa</i>
atque: and	-um, -, plurimus -a -um
Avvileva: Aquileia, Italy	mundō: world; singular masculine ablative from <i>mundus</i> , <i>mundī</i>
Bethleem: Bethlehem	occīsus: occīsus est = he was killed; singular masculine
Brittānia: Britain	nominative perfect passive participle from <i>occīdō</i> , <i>occīdere</i> ,
capite: head; singular neuter ablative from <i>caput</i> , <i>capitis</i>	occīdī, <i>occīsus</i>
captus: captus est = was seized, captured; singular masculine	omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from <i>omnis</i> , <i>omnis</i> ,
nominative perfect passive participle from <i>capiō</i> , <i>capere</i> ,	omne
cēpī, <i>captus</i>	Parāssis: in Paris
Catholīcōrum: Catholic; plural common genitive from	patribus: fathers; plural masculine ablative from <i>pater</i> , <i>patris</i>
catholicus, <i>catholici</i>	per: through
clāruit: he became famous; 3rd person singular perfect active	post: behind, after, since
from <i>claresco</i> , <i>clarescere</i> , <i>clarui</i> , -	presbyter: elder, presbyter; singular masculine nominative from
clārus: clear, bright, famous; singular masculine nominative	presbyter, <i>presbyteri</i>
from <i>clārus</i> , <i>clāra</i> -um, <i>clārior</i> -or -us, <i>clārissimus</i> -a -um	prōdītiōne: betrayal, treason; singular feminine ablative from
collīgitur: is assembled; 3rd person singular present passive	prōdītiō, <i>prōdītiōn</i>
from <i>colligō</i> , <i>colligere</i> , <i>collēgi</i> , <i>collectus</i>	quā: what; singular female ablative of <i>qui</i>
comīte: comrade; singular common ablative from <i>comes</i> , <i>comitis</i>	qui: who; plural masculine nominative of <i>quis</i>
cōsōrtem: consort; singular common accusative from <i>cōsors</i> ,	regēbat: he was ruling; 3rd person singular imperfect active
cōsōrtis	from <i>regō</i> , <i>regere</i> , <i>rēxi</i> , <i>rēctus</i>
Cōnstantīnopolim: Constantinople; singular feminine accusative	rēgiū: royal; plural ablative from <i>regius</i> , <i>regia</i> , <i>regium</i>
from Constantinopolis, Constantinopolis	rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
cōsulibūs: consuls; plural masculine ablative from <i>cōsul</i> ,	rēgnō, <i>rēgnāre</i> , <i>rēgnāvi</i> , <i>rēgnātus</i>
cōsulis	repetendūs: repetendūs est = should be returned to; singular
cuius: whose; singular genitive from <i>quis</i>	masculine nominative future passive participle from <i>repetō</i> ,
cum: with	<i>repetere</i> , <i>repetīvī</i> , <i>repetūtūs</i>
damnātur: they are condemned; 3rd person plural present	sēdītōnēm: sedition, treason; singular feminine accusative from
passive from <i>damnō</i> , <i>damnāre</i> , <i>damnāvī</i> , <i>damnātūs</i>	sēdītiō, <i>sēdītōnīs</i>
damnātūs: he is condemned; 3rd person singular present	sermō: discussion; singular masculine nominative from <i>sermō</i> ,
passive from <i>damnō</i> , <i>damnāre</i> , <i>damnāvī</i> , <i>damnātūs</i>	<i>sermōnīs</i>
dē: of, from, away from, down from	sistītū: he is stopped; 3rd person singular present passive from
dogmatē: doctrine, dogma; singular neuter ablative from	<i>sistō</i> , <i>sistere</i> , <i>stītī</i> , <i>status</i>
dogma, <i>dogmatis</i>	spoliātū: having been plundered; singular masculine
dum: while, as long as, until	nominative perfect passive participle from <i>spoliō</i> , <i>spoliāre</i> ,
eōdēm: the same;(pronoun)	<i>spoliāvī</i> , <i>spoliātūs</i>
episcopus: overseer, bishop; singular masculine nominative	superātū: having been overcome; singular masculine
from <i>episcopus</i> , <i>episcopi</i>	nominative perfect passive participle from
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> ,	suū: his; singular masculine accusative from <i>suūs</i> , <i>sui</i>
<i>fuī</i> , <i>futūrūs</i>	synodus: synod (a religious council); singular masculine
et: and	nominative from <i>synodus</i> , <i>synodi</i>
factus: factus est = was made; singular masculine nominative	temporī: of times, of periods; singular neuter genitive from
perfect passive participle from <i>faciō</i> , <i>facere</i> , <i>fēcī</i> , <i>factus</i>	<i>tempus</i> , <i>temporis</i>
fēcīt: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>faciō</i> ,	tertīō: third; singular masculine ablative from <i>trēs</i> -es -ia,
<i>facere</i> , <i>fēcī</i> , <i>factus</i>	<i>tertius</i> -a -um, <i>terti</i> -ae -a, <i>ter</i>
filium: son; singular masculine accusative from <i>filius</i> , <i>filī</i>	Theodosiō: Theodosius; (Emperor Theodosius 379-395; II 408-
filius: son; singular masculine nominative from <i>filius</i> , <i>filī</i>	450); singular masculine dative from Theodosius, Theodosiī
frātē: brother; singular masculine ablative from <i>frāter</i> , <i>frātrīs</i>	tōtō: whole, total; singular ablative from <i>tōtūs</i> , <i>tōtā</i> , <i>tōtūm</i> (gen
fugiēt: fleeing; singular nominative present participle from	<i>ius</i>)
<i>fugiō</i> , <i>fugere</i> , <i>fūgī</i> , <i>fugitus</i>	trānsfretātēt: he passed over, ferried; 3rd person singular
Galliā: Gaul; singular feminine nominative from <i>Gallia</i> , <i>Galliae</i>	imperfect active subjunctive from <i>trānsfretō</i> , <i>trānsfretārē</i> ,
Galliās: Gaul; plural feminine accusative from <i>Gallia</i> , <i>Galliae</i>	<i>transfretāvī</i> , <i>transfretātūs</i>
Grātiānūs: Gratian, emperor of the Western Roman Empire from	tum: then
367 to 383	Turonēnsis: of Tours, France
habētūr: it is had; 3rd person singular present passive from	tyrannō: tyrant; singular masculine ablative from <i>tyrannus</i> ,
<i>habēo</i> , <i>habērē</i> , <i>habuī</i> , <i>habitus</i>	<i>tyrannī</i>
haeresēs: heresies; plural feminine nominative from <i>haeresis</i> ,	Valentiānō: Valens; (Emperor Flavius Julius Valens 364-378 lost
haeresis	at Adrianople); singular masculine ablative from Valens,
Hieronymū: Saint Jerome	<i>Valentīs</i>
imperātōr: commander; singular masculine nominative from	Valentiānūs: Valens; (Emperor Flavius Julius Valens 364-378 lost
<i>imperātōr</i> , <i>imperātōris</i>	at Adrianople); singular masculine nominative from Valens,
imperīum: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter	<i>Valentīs</i>
accusative from <i>imperīum</i> , <i>imperīi</i>	Valentīnānō: Valentinian; (Emperor Flavius Valentinian I 364-
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	375; II 375-392); singular masculine ablative from
indumentīs: garments, robes; plural neuter ablative from	<i>Valentinianus</i> , <i>Valentiniani</i>
<i>indūmentum</i> , <i>indūmentī</i>	Victor: Victor, son of Magnus Maximus
interfectus: interfectus est = he was killed; singular masculine	Victorem: Victor, son of Magnus Maximus
nominative perfect passive participle from	virtūtibūs: virtues, manliness, power; plural feminine ablative
intervallū: interval; singular neuter accusative from	from <i>virtūs</i> , <i>virtūtūs</i>
<i>intervallum</i> , <i>intervallī</i>	
iterum: again	
lapide: milestone; singular masculine ablative from <i>lapis</i> , <i>lapidis</i>	
Lugdūni: in Lyons, France; singular neuter ablative from	
<i>Lugdunūs</i> , <i>Lugduni</i>	
magistri: captain; singular masculine genitive from <i>magister</i> ,	
<i>magistrī</i>	
māgnīs: great; plural ablative from <i>māgnus</i> , <i>māgna</i> -um, <i>major</i>	
-or -us, <i>maximus</i> -a -um	
Martinus: St. Martin of Tours	
Maximiānō: Magnus Maximus, emperor of the western Roman	
empire from 383 to 388, who took the throne by killing	
Gratian (ablative case)	
Maximus: Magnus Maximus, emperor of the Western Roman	
Empire	

30 Tribus vicibus occīsī sunt ducēs Rōmānōrum ā Brittannīs. Brittōnēs autem dum anxiēbantur ā barbarōrum gentibus, id est Scottōrum et Pictōrum, flāgitābant auxilium Rōmānōrum, et dum lēgātī mittēbantur cum magnō lūctū et cum sablōnibus super capita sua intrābant et portābant magna mūnera sēcum cōnsulibus Rōmānōrum prō admissō scelere occīsiōnis ducum et suscipiēbant cōsulēs grāta dōna ab illīs, et prōmittēbant cum iūrāmentō accipere iugum Rōmānicī iūris, licet¹ dūrum fuisset.

Et Rōmānī vēnērunt cum maximō exercitū ad auxilium eōrum et posuērunt imperātōrēs in Brittanniā et compositō imperātōre cum ducibus revertēbantur exercitū ad Rōmam usque, et sīc alternātim per 348 annōs faciēbant. Brittōnēs autem propter gravitātem imperiī occīdēbant ducēs Rōmānōrum et auxilium posteā petēbant. Rōmānī autem ad imperium auxiliumque et ad vindicandum veniēbant et spoliātā Brittanniā aurō argentōque cum aere et omnī pretiōsa veste et melle² cum magnō triumphō revertēbantur.

¹And they promised with an oath to accept the yoke of Roman law, even if it was hard.

²Melle literally means "with honey" but here likely indicates pleasant things in general.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 accipere: to take, to grasp, to receive, to accept; person present active from accipio, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 admissō: having been admitted; singular masculine ablative perfect passive participle from admittō, admittere, admisi, admisus
 aere: copper; singular neuter ablative from aes, aeris
 alternātī: alternately (adverb)
 annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from annus, annī
 anxiebantur: they were anxious
 argentō: silver; singular neuter ablative from argentum, argenti
 aurō: gold; singular neuter ablative from aurum, aurī
 autem: but, however, moreover
 auxilium: help, aid; singular neuter accusative from auxilium, auxiliī
 barbarōrum: of the barbarous; plural masculine genitive from barbarus, barbara -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -um
 Brittanniā: in Britain
 Brittannī: Britons (dative or ablative case)
 Brittonēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from Brittō, Brittonis
 capita: head; plural neuter accusative from caput, capitī
 compositō: having been ordered; singular masculine ablative perfect passive participle from compono, componere, composui, compositus
 cōsulēs: consuls; plural masculine nominative or accusative from cōsul, cōsulīs
 cōsulibus: consuls; plural masculine ablative from cōsul, cōsulīs
 cum: with
 dōna: gifts; plural neuter accusative from dōnum, dōnī
 ducēs: leaders; plural masculine nominative or accusative from dux, ducis
 ducibus: leaders; plural masculine ablative from dux, ducis
 ducum: of leaders; plural masculine genitive from dux, ducis
 dum: while, as long as, until
 dūrum: hard; singular neuter nominative from dūrus, dūra -um, dūrior -or -us, dūrissimus -a -um
 eōrum: their; plural masc. or neuter. genitive
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 exercitū: army; singular neuter ablative from exerceo, exercere, exercui, exercitus
 faciēbant: they were doing, they were making; 3rd person plural imperfect active from faciō, facere, fecī, factus
 flāgitābant: they were demanding; 3rd person plural imperfect active from flāgitō, flāgitāre, flāgitāvī, flāgitātūs
 fuisset: he (might) have had been; 3rd person singular pluperfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 gentibus: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine ablative from gēns, gentis
 grāta: agreeable, thankful; plural neuter accusative from grātus, grāta -um, grātior -or -us, grātissimus -a -um
 gravitātem: gravity, weight, importance; singular feminine accusative from gravitās, gravitātis
 id: it
 illīs: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 imperātōre: commander; singular masculine ablative from imperātor, imperātōris
 imperātōrēs: commander; plural masculine accusative from imperātor, imperātōris
 imperiū: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter genitive from imperium, imperi(i)
 imperiū: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter accusative from imperium, imperi(i)
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 intrābant: they were entering; 3rd person plural imperfect active from intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātūs
 iugum: yoke; singular neuter accusative from iugum, iugī
 iūrāmentō: oath; singular neuter ablative from iūrāmentum, iūrāmentī
 iūris: law, right, justice; singular neuter genitive from iūs, iūris
 lēgātū: having been sent; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from lego, legare, legavi, legatus
 licet: even if
 lūctū: grief, sorrow; singular masculine ablative from lūctus, lūctūs
 māgna: large; plural neuter accusative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 māgnō: large; singular masculine ablative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 maximō: largest; singular masculine ablative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 melle: pleasantness, honey; singular neuter ablative from mel, mellis

mittēbantur: they were sending; 3rd person plural imperfect passive from mittō, mittere, misi, missus
 mūnera: gifts; plural neuter accusative from mūnus, mūneris
 occidēbant: they were killing; 3rd person plural perfect from occidō, occidere, occidī, occidūs
 occisi: occisi sunt = they were killed; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from occidō, occidere, occidī, occidūs
 occisiōnīs: massacre, slaughter, murder; singular feminine genitive from occisiō, occisiōnīs
 omni: all, every; singular ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 per: through
 petēbant: they were asking for; 3rd person plural imperfect active from petō, petere, petivī, petūtūs
 Pictōrum: of the Picts
 portābant: they were carrying; 3rd person plural imperfect active from porto, portare, portavi, portatus
 posteā: thereafter, later
 posuērunt: they had put; 3rd person plural perfect active from pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus
 pretiōsā: precious; singular feminine ablative from pretiōsus, pretiōsā -um, pretiōsior -or -us, pretiōsissimus -a -um
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 prōmitēbant: they were promising; 3rd person plural imperfect active from prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmisi, prōmissus
 propter: because of, near
 revertēbantur: they were returning; 3rd person plural imperfect passive from revertō, revertere, reverti, -
 Rōmā: Rome; singular feminine accusative from Rōma, Rōmae
 Rōmāni: Romans
 Rōmānicī: Romanic; singular masculine genitive from Romanicus, Romanica, Romanicum
 Rōmānōrum: Romans; plural masculine genitive from Rōmānūs, -a -um
 sablōnibus: with sand/dust; plural neuter ablative variant spelling of sabulīs, from sabulum, sabulī.
 scelere: crime; singular neuter ablative from scelus, sceleris
 sēcum: with oneself
 sīc: thus
 spoliātā: having been plundered; singular feminine ablative perfect passive participle from spoliō, spoliāre, spoliāvī, spoliātūs
 sua: her/its; sing. fem. nom. or abl. or neuter nom. or acc. from suus
 super: above, on top of
 suscipiēbant: they were undertaking; 3rd person plural imperfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus
 Scottōrum: of the Scots
 tribūs: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 triumphō: triumph; singular masculine ablative from triumphus, triumphī
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vēnērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 vēniēbant: they were coming; 3rd person plural imperfect active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 veste: clothing; singular feminine ablative from vestis, vestis
 vicibus: times; plural feminine ablative from vicis, vicis
 vindicāndū: vindicating; singular neuter accusative future passive participle from vindicō, vindicāre, vindicāvī, vindicātūs

31 Factum est suprā dictum bellum, quod fuit inter Brittonēs et Rōmānōs, quandō ducēs illōrum occīsī sunt, et occīsiōnem Maximī tyrannī trānsāctōque Rōmānōrum imperiō in Brittanniā per quadrāgintā annōs fuērunt sub metū. Guorthigirnus rēgnāvit in Brittanniā et dum ipse rēgnābat, urgēbātur ā metū Pictōrum Scottōrumque et ā Rōmānicō impetū nec nōn et ā timōre Ambrosiī. Intereā vēnērunt trēs ciulae ā Germāniā expulsae in exiliō, in quibus erant Hors et Hengīst, quī et ipsī frātrēs erant, filiī Guictglis, filiī Guigtā, filiī Guecthā, filiī Woden, filiī Frealaf, filiī Fredulf, filiī Fīnn, filiī Fodepald, filiī Geta, quī fuit, ut aiunt¹, filius deī. Nōn ipse est deus deōrum, āmēn, deus exercituum, sed ūnus est ab īdōlīs eōrum, quod ipsī colēbant.

Guorthigirnus suscēpit eōs benīgnē et trādidit eīs īsulam, quae in lingūā eōrum vocātur Tanet, Brittannīcō sermōne Ruoihm. Rēgnante Grātiānō secundō cum Equitiō², Saxonēs ā Guorthigirnō susceptī sunt annō 347 post passiōnem Chrīstī.

¹As they say.

²I added this comma for ease of parsing. Another text, *Nennius Interpretātus*, glosses this sentence as *Grātiānus et Aequitiūs in rēgnō Rōmānōrum in illō tempore, ā nātīvitāte Chrīstī autem 347 annōs.*

ā: from, out of, by, since	īnsulae
ab: from, out of, by, since	inter: between, among, during
āiunt: they say; 3rd person plural present active from āiō, āiere,	intereā: meanwhile
Ambrosiī: of Ambrosius, probably Ambrosius Aurelianus, a Romano-British commander of the same time period as Guorthigirnus; <i>Nennius Interpretātus</i> supports this view. Other options involve Ambrosius (Merlinus) or Ambrose of Milan (unlikely, though mentioned in section 29).	ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
amen: amen, truly, verily	ipsi: themselves; plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī	linguā: tongue, language; singular feminine ablative from lingua, linguae
annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from annus, annī	Maximi: of Magnus Maximus, emperor of the Western Roman Empire; singular masculine genitive from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative from bellum, belli	metū: fear; singular masculine ablative from metus, metū
benīgnē: kind, good, friendly; adverb from benīgnus, benīgna -um, benīgnior -or -us, benīgnissimus -a -um	nec non: and also, certainly
Brittāniā: in Britain	nōn: not
Brittānicō: Britannic (ablative case)	occīsī: occīsī sunt = they were killed; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from
Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine accusative from Britto, Brittōnis	occīsōnēm: massacre, slaughter, murder; singular feminine accusative from occīsīō, occīsōnīs
Chrīstī: anointed one, Christ; singular masculine genitive from Christus, Christī	passiōnēm: suffering, passion; singular feminine accusative from passiō, passiōnīs
ciulae: longship; plural feminine nominative variant spelling from ceola, ceolae	per: through
colēbant: they were worshiping; 3rd person plural imperfect active from colō, colere, coluī, cultus	Pictōrum: of the Picts
cum: with	post: behind, after, since
Dei: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei	quadrāgintā: 40
Deōrum: of gods; plural masculine genitive from Deus, Dei	quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
Deus: god; singular masculine nominative from Deus, Dei	quando: when, because
suprā dictum: the above-said	qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
ducēs: leaders; plural masculine nominative or accusative from dux, ducis	quibus: what; plural ablative of qui
dum: while, as long as, until	quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
eīs: to them; plural dative or ablative from is, ea, id	rēgnābat: he was reigning; 3rd person singular imperfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātūs
eōrum: their; plural masc. or neuter. genitive	rēgnānte: reigning; singular ablative present participle from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātūs
eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id	rēgnāvīt: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātūs
Equitiō: likely Equitius, a magister militum who served in the Roman army in the 360s and 370s.	Rōmānicō: Romanic; singular masculine ablative from Romanicus, Romanica, Romanicum
erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	Rōmānōrum: Romans; plural masculine genitive from Rōmānūs, -a -um
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	Rōmānōs: Romans; plural masculine accusative from Rōmānūs, -a -um
et: and	Ruoīhī: the island of Thanet, which laid off the southeast coast of England. It is now a peninsula, not an island.
exercitūm: of armies. Lord of Hosts (armies) is a common epithet for God in the Bible; plural masculine genitive from exercitus, exercitūs	Saxonēs: The Saxons
exiliō: exile; singular neuter ablative from exilium, exiliī	Scottōrum: of the Scots
expulsaē: having been driven out; plural feminine nominative perfect passive participle from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus	secundō: following
factūm: factūm est = it occurred; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from faciō, facere, fecī, factus	sed: but
filiū: of the son; singular masculine genitive from filius, filī	sermōne: speech; singular masculine ablative from sermō, sermōnis
filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, filī	sub: below, under
Finn: an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist	suprā: above
Fodepald: Fodepald, an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist	suscēpīt: he supported, received; 3rd person singular perfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus
frātrēs: brothers; plural masculine nominative from frāter, frātris	suscepīt: suscepīt sunt = were received; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from
Frealaf: Fraelaf, an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist	Tanet: the island of Thanet, which laid off the southeast coast of England. It is now a peninsula, not an island.
Fredulf: Fredulf, an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist	timōre: fear; singular masculine ablative from timor, timōris
fuērunt: they were; 3rd person plural perfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	trādīdīt: he handed over; 3rd person singular perfect active from trādō, trādere, trādīdī, trādītūs
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	trānsactō: having been accomplished; singular masculine ablative perfect passive participle from transigo, transigere, transegi, transactus
Germāniā: Germany; singular feminine ablative from Germānia, Germāniāe	trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
Geta: Geta, an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist	tyrānnī: of the tyrant; singular masculine genitive from tyrannus, tyrannī
Grātiānō: Gratian, emperor of the western Roman empire; singular masculine ablative from grātiā, grātiāe	ūnus: one
Guectha: an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist	urgēbātū: he was being urged; 3rd person singular imperfect passive from urgeo, urgēre, ursi, -
Guictglis: an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist	ut: so that
Guigta: an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist	vēnērūt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
Guorthigirnō: by Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (ablative case)	vocātū: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātūs
Guorthigirnus: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern), a 5th-century warlord in Britain who invited in Hengist and Horsa	Woden: an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist
Hengist: a Saxon warrior who came to Britain during the reign of Guorthigirnus (Vortigern)	
Hors: Horsa, a Saxon warrior who came to Britain during the reign of Guorthigirnus (Vortigern)	
īdōlis: idols; plural neuter ablative from īdōlūm, īdōlī	
illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud	
imperiō: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter ablative from imperium, imperiū	
impetuī: attack, assault, fury; singular masculine ablative from impetus, impetuī	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
īnsulam: island; singular feminine accusative from īnsula,	

32 In tempore illīus vēnit sānctus Germānus ad praedicandum in Brittanniā et clāruit apud illōs in multīs virtūtibus et multī per eum salvī factī sunt et plūrimī periērunt¹.

Aliquanta mīrācula, quae per illum fēcit deus, scribenda² dēcrēvī.

Prīnum mīrāculum dē mīrāculīs eīs: erat quīdam rēx inīquus atque tyrannus valdē, cui nōmen erat Benlī. Illum vir sānctus voluit vīsitāre et properāre ad inīquum rēgem, ut praedicāret illī. At cum ipse homō Deī vēnisset ad ōstium urbis cum comitibus suīs, vēnit portārius et salūtāvit eōs et mīsērunt³ eum ad rēgem et rēx dūrum respōnsum dedit illīs et cum iūrāmentō dīxit: sī fuerint⁴ vel sī mānserint usque ad caput anni, nōn venient umquam in mediō urbis meae.

¹Many were saved through him and many more perished. Saint Germanus preached against Pelagianism, a heresy that denied original sin and argued that man could merit eternal life without the grace of God. Thus, it is likely that when the author wrote *plūrimī perriērunt*, he is referring to those who remained in heresy and thus incurred a spiritual death.

²I decided are to be written.

³Saint Germanus and his companions sent the doorkeeper to the king while they remained outside, waiting for permission to enter.

⁴(Even) if you were or remained (waiting at the door) until the start of the year, you will not ever come into the middle of my city.

ad: to, towards, at, according to	prīmum
aliquanta: some	properāre: to hurry; present infinitive from properō, properāre,
annī: year; singular masculine genitive from annus, annī	properāvī, properātus
apud: at, by, near	quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
at: and	qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
atque: and	quīdam: a certain; singular masculine nominative of quīdam
Benlī: a tyrant that Saint Germanus wanted to preach to	rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
Brittannīa: Britain (ablative case)	rēsponsum: response; singular neuter accusative from
caput: beginning, head; singular neuter nominative from caput,	respōnsum, respōnsī
capitis	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
clāruit: he became famous; 3rd person singular perfect active	salūtāvit: he saluted, he greeted; 3rd person singular perfect
from claresco, clarescere, clarui, -	active from salutō, salutāre, salūtāvī, salutātus
comitibus: comrades; plural common ablative from comes,	salvi: saved (in the sense of salvation, in this context), safe;
comitis	singular masculine genitive from salvus, salva, salvum
cui: who; singular dative from quis	sānctus: holy, saint
cum: with	scribenda: are to be written, should be written; plural neuter
dē: of, from, away from, down from	accusative gerundive from scribō, scribēre, scripsī, scriptus
dēcrevī: I decided; 1st person singular perfect active from	sī: if
dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus	suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dō, dare,	tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus,
didi, datus	temporis
Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei	tyrannus: tyrant; singular masculine nominative from tyrannus,
Deus: god; singular masculine nominative from Deus, Dei	tyranni
dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō,	umquam: ever
dixi, dictus	urbis: city; singular feminine genitive from urbs, urbis
dūrum: hard; singular neuter nominative from dūrus, dūra -um,	ūsque: until, all the way, up until
dūrīor -or -us, dūrissimus -a -um	ut: so that
eīs: to them; plural dative or ablative from is, ea, id	valdē: very
eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id	vel: or
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,	venient: they will come; 3rd person plural future active from
esse, fui, futūrus	veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
et: and	vēnisset: he (might) have had come; 3rd person singular
eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id	pluperfect active subjunctive from veniō, venire, vēnī,
factū: factū sunt: they were made; plural masculine nominative	ventus
perfect passive participle from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō,
fēcīt: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō,	venire, vēnī, ventus
facere, fēcī, factus	vir: man; singular masculine nominative from vir, virī
fuerint: they will have been; 3rd person plural future perfect	virtūtibus: virtues, manliness, power; plural feminine ablative
from esse	from virtūs, virtūtis
Germānus: Saint Germanus	vīsitāre: to visit; present infinitive from vīsitō, vīsitāre, vīsitāvī,
homō: person; singular masculine nominative from homō,	vīsitātus
hominis	voluit: he wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active from volō,
illī: to him; singular masculine dative from ille, illa, illud	velle, volū, -
illīs: to them; plural dative from ille, illa, illud	
illīs: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud	
illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud	
illum: that; singular feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
inīquum: unjust; singular masculine accusative from inīquus,	
inīqua -um, inīquior -or -us, inīquissimus -a -um	
inīquus: unjust; singular masculine nominative from inīquus,	
inīqua -um, inīquior -or -us, inīquissimus -a -um	
ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,	
ipsum	
iūrāmentō: oath; singular neuter ablative from iūrāmentum,	
iūrāmentī	
mānserint: they will have remained; 3rd person plural perfect	
active subjunctive from maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus	
meāe: my; singular feminine genitive from meus, mea, meum	
mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from medius, media,	
medium	
mīrācula: miracles; plural neuter accusative from mīrāculum,	
mīrāculī	
mīrāculīs: miracles; plural neuter ablative from mīrāculum,	
mīrāculī	
mīrāculūm: miracle; singular neuter nominative from	
mīrāculūm, mīrāculī	
mīsērunt: they sent; 3rd person plural perfect active from mittō,	
mittere, mīsī, missus	
multī: many; plural nominative from multus, multa -um, -	
plūrimus -a -um	
multīs: many; plural ablative from multus, multa -um, -	
plūrimus -a -um	
nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis	
nōn: not	
ōstium: door; singular neuter nominative from ōstium, ōstī	
per: through	
perīvērunt: they perished; 3rd person plural perfect active from	
pereō, perīre, perīvī, peritus	
plūrimī: very many; plural masculine nominative from multus,	
multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um	
portāriūs: doorkeeper; singular masculine nominative from	
portāriūs, portāriū	
praedicāndū: preaching; gerund from praedicō, praedicāre,	
praedicāvī, praedicātūs	
praedicātū: he was preaching; 3rd person singular imperfect	
active subjunctive from praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvī,	
praedicātūs	
prīmū: first; singular neuter nominative from prīmus, prīma,	

Dum ipsi expectarent ianuatum, ut nuntiaret¹ illis sermonem tyrannii, dies declinabat ad vesperum et nox appropinquabat et nescierunt, quoniam irent². Inter ea venit unus de servis regis in mediis urbium et inclinavit se ante virum Dei et nuntiavit illis omnia verba tyrannii et invitavit illos ad casam suam et exierunt cum eodem et benignè suscepit eos. Et ille nihil habebat de omnibus generibus iumentorum excepta una vacca cum vitulam, et occidit vitulum et coxit et posuit ante illos. Et praeccepit sanctus Germanus, ut non confringeretur³ os de ossibus eius et sic factum est et in crastinum vitulus inventus est ante matrem suam sanus et vivus incolumisque.

¹That he might announce to them the decree of the tyrant.

²They did not know to where they might go (to spend the night).

³That they not break a bone of his bones. This is reminiscent of John 19:36 ἐγένετο γάρ ταῦτα ἵνα οὐ γραφὴ πληρωθῇ Ὁστοῦν οὐ συντριβήσεται αὐτοῦ. "This happened that the scripture be fulfilled: not one of his bones will be broken", which in turn references LXX Psalm 33:21 φυλάσσει Κύριος πάντα τὰ ὄστα αὐτῶν, ἐν ἐξ αὐτῶν οὐ συντριβήσεται. "The Lord guards all his bones, not one of them will be broken".

ad: to, towards, at, according to	sānctus: holy, saint
ante: before, in front, forwards	sānus: healthy, sound; singular masculine nominative from sānus, sāna, sānum
appropinquābat: he approached; 3rd person singular imperfect active from appropinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī, appropinquātus	se: himself
benignē: kind, good, friendly; singular masculine vocative from benignus, benigna -um, benignior -or -us, benignissimus -a -um	sermōnem: decree, speech; singular masculine accusative from sermō, sermōnis
casam: house; singular feminine accusative from casa, casae	servīs: slaves, servants; plural masculine ablative from servus, servi
cōfringerētur: it might not be broken; 3rd person singular imperfect passive subjunctive from cōfringō, cōfringere, cōfrēgī, cōfrāctus	sīc: thus
coxit: he cooked; 3rd person singular perfect active from coquō, coquere, coxi, coccus	suam: his, her, its; singular feminine acc. from suus
crāstīnō: on the next day; singular masculine ablative from crāstīnus, crāstīna, crāstīnum	suscēpīt: he received, supported; 3rd person singular perfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus
cum: with	tyrannī: of the tyrant; singular masculine genitive from tyrannus, tyranni
dē: of, from, away from, down from	ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a -um, singuli -ae -a, semel
dēclīnābat: it went down; 3rd person singular imperfect active from dēclīnō, dēclīnāre, dēclīnāvī, dēclīnātus	ūnus: one
Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei	urbīs: city; singular feminine genitive from urbs, urbis
dīes: day; singular common nominative from dīēs, dīēi	ut: so that
dum: while, as long as, until	vaccā: cow; singular feminine ablative from vacca, vaccae
ē: out of, from	vēnīt: he came; 3rd person singular perfect active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
ea: them; plural neuter accusative from is, ea, id	verba: word; plural neuter accusative from verbum, verbī
eiūs: his/her/its	vesperī: evening; singular masculine accusative from vesper, vesperis
eō: him; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id	virūm: man; singular masculine accusative from vir, virī
eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id	vitulō: calf; singular masculine ablative from vitulus, vituli
et: and	vitulum: calf; singular feminine accusative from vitula, vitulæ
exceptā: except	vitulus: calf; singular masculine nominative from vitulus, vitulī
exiērunt: they came out, they went out; 3rd person plural perfect active from exēō, exire, exiī, exitus	vīvus: alive; singular masculine nominative from vīvus, vīva, vīvum
expectārent: they awaited; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from expectō, expectāre, expectāvī, expectātus	
factum: factum est = it was done;	
generibus: types; plural neuter ablative from genus, generis	
Germanus: Saint Germanus	
habēbat: he had; 3rd person singular imperfect active from habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus	
iānuatōrem: door-keeper; singular masculine accusative from iānuatōr, iānuatoris. This word was not in any dictionary I consulted; yet the meaning is clear from the root word iānua	
ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud	
illis: to them; plural dative from ille, illa, illud	
illōs: them; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
inclināvit: he inclined; 3rd person singular perfect active from inclinō, inclināre, inclināvī, inclinātus	
incolumis: unharmed; singular common nominative from incolumis, incolumis, incolumē	
inter: between, among, during	
inventus: inventus est = was found; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from inveniō, invenire, invēnī, inventus	
invītāvit: he invited; 3rd person singular perfect active from invītō, invītāre, invītāvī, invītātus	
ipsī: they themselves; plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum	
īrent: they (might) have gone; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from eo, ire, ī, itus	
iūmentōrūm: of food. Technically it means 'of draft animals' but the context makes it clear; plural neuter genitive from iūmentum, iūmentī	
mātrem: mother; singular feminine accusative from māter, mātris	
mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from medius, media, medium	
nesciverunt: they didn't know; 3rd person plural perfect active from nesciō, nescire, nescīvī, nescitus	
nihil: not at all	
nōn: not	
nox: night; singular feminine nominative from nox, noctis	
nūntiāret: he announced; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus	
nūntiāvit: he announced; 3rd person singular perfect active from nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus	
occīdit: he killed, 3rd person singular perfect from occīdō, occīdere, occidī, occisus	
omnia: all, every; plural neuter accusative from omnis, omnis, omne	
omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne	
os: bone; singular neuter nominative from os, ossis	
ossibus: bones; plural neuter ablative from os, ossis	
posit: he put; 3rd person singular perfect active from pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus	
praecepīt: he ordered; 3rd person singular perfect active from praecipiō, praecipere, praecepī, praeceptus	
quō: to where; singular ablative of quis	
rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis	

33 Iterum dē māne surrēxērunt, ut impetrārent¹ salūtātiōnem tyrannī. At ipsī, cum
ōrārent et exspectārent iuxtā portam arcis, et ecce vir ūnus currēbat et sūdor illīus ā
vertice ad plantās pedum distillābat. Inclīnābat sē ante illōs et dīxit sānctus
Germānus: crēdis in Sānctam Trīnitātem? Et respondit ille: 'crēdō', et baptīzātus est
et ōsculāvit eum et dīxit illī: 'vāde in pāce: in istā hōrā moriēris et angelī Deī in aere
expectant tē, ut gradiēris cum illīs ad Deum, cui crēdidistī'. Et ipse laetus intrāvit in
arcem et praefectus tenuit illum et alligāvit et ante tyrannum ductūs et interfectus
est, quia mōs erat apud nēquissimum² tyrannum, nisi quis ante sōlis ortum
pervēnisset ad servitūtem in arce, interficiēbātur. Et mānsērunt tōtā diē iuxtā portam
cīvitātis et nōn impetrāvērunt, ut salūtārent tyrannum.

¹*That they might obtain an audience with the tyrant.*

²*Because the custom was with the most worst tyrant, that unless someone would come to serve in the citadel
before the rising of the sun, he was killed.* The reader may benefit from pondering the symbolism of the times
(sun setting, sun rising) and locations (outside the city, inside the citadel) given in this story.

ā: from, out of, by, since	neuter
ad: to, towards, at, according to	ōsculāvit: he kissed; 3rd person singular perfect from ōsculō, ōsculāre, ōsculāvī, ōsculātūm
aere: in the air; singular masculine ablative from āēr, āeris	pāce: peace; singular feminine ablative from pāx, pācis
alligāre: he tied; 3rd person singular perfect active from alligō, alligāre, alligāvī, alligātūs	pedum: of feet; plural masculine genitive from pēs, pedis
angeli: angel; plural masculine nominative from angelus, angeli	pervēnisset: he had come; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
ante: before, in front, forwards	subjunctive from perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventus
apud: at, by, near	plantās: soles; plural feminine accusative from planta, plantae
arce: citadel; singular feminine ablative from arx, arcis	portām: gate; singular feminine accusative from porta, portae
arcx, arcis: citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx, arcis	praefectus: prefect, officer; singular masculine nominative from
at: and	praefectus, praefectī
baptizātūs: baptizātūs est = he was baptized;	quia: because
cīvitātis: city; singular feminine genitive from cīvitās, cīvitātis	quis: who
crēdidi: you believed; 2nd person singular perfect active from	respondit: he responded; 3rd person singular perfect active
credo, credere, credidi, creditus	from respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus
crēdis: you believe; 2nd person singular present active from	salūtārent: they greeted; 3rd person plural imperfect active
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crēditus	subjunctive from salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī, salūtātūs
crēdō: I believe; 1st person singular present active from crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crēditus	salūtātōnēm: greeting; singular feminine accusative from
cui: whom; singular dative from quis	salūtātīō, salūtātōnīs
cum: with	sānctam: holy
currēbat: he ran; 3rd person singular imperfect active from	sānctus: holy, saint
currō, currere, cucurri, cursus	se: himself
dē: of, from, away from, down from	servitūtēm: servitude; singular feminine accusative from
Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei	servitūs, servitūtis
Deum: god; singular masculine accusative from Deus, Dei	sōlis: sun; singular masculine genitive from sōl, sōlis
diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēi	sūdor: sweat; singular masculine nominative from sūdor, sūdōris
distillābat: it was dripping; 3rd person singular imperfect active	surrexērunt: they raised up; 3rd person plural perfect active
from distillō, distillāre, distillāvī, distillātūs	from surgō, surgere, surrexī, surrectus
dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus	tē: to you, accusative from tu
ductus: ductus est = was lead; singular masculine nominative	tenuit: he held, he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from
perfect passive participle from dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus	teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus
ecce: Look! Behold!	tōtā: whole, total; singular feminine ablative from tōtus, tōta, tōtūm (gen -ius)
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	Trīnitātēm: Trinity; singular feminine accusative from Trīnitās, Trīnitātis
et: and	tyrannī: of the tyrant; singular masculine genitive from
eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id	tyrannus, tyrannī
expectant: they await; 3rd person plural present active from	tyrannūm: tyrant; singular masculine accusative from tyrannus, tyrannī
expectō, expectāre, expectāvī, expectātūs	ūnus: one
exspectārent: they awaited; 3rd person plural imperfect active	ut: so that
subjunctive from exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātūs	vāde: go!; 2nd person singular present active imperative from
Germanus: Saint Germanus	vādō, vādere, vāsī, -
gradieris: you will walk; 2nd person singular future from	vertice: head, top, peak; singular masculine ablative from
gradior, gradī, gressus	vertex, verticis
hōrā: hour, time; singular feminine ablative from hōra, hōrae	vir: man; singular masculine nominative from vir, virī
ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud	
illi: to him; singular dative from ille, illa, illud	
illīs: those; plural ablative from ille, illa, illud	
illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud	
illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud	
illum: that; singular feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud	
impetrārent: they obtained; 3rd person plural imperfect active	
subjunctive from impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātūs	
impetrāvērunt: they obtained; 3rd person plural perfect active	
from impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātūs	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
inclinābat: he inclined; 3rd person singular imperfect active	
from inclinō, inclināre, inclināvī, inclinātūs	
interfectus: interfectus est = he was killed; singular masculine	
nominative perfect passive participle from interficiō, interficere, interfeci, interfectus	
interficiēbātū: he was killed; 3rd person singular imperfect	
passive from interficiō, interficere, interfeci, interfectus	
intrāvit: he entered; 3rd person singular perfect active from	
intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātūs	
ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum	
ipsī: they themselves; plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum	
istā: this; singular feminine ablative from iste, ista, istud	
iterum: again	
iuxtā: near, nearly	
laetus: happy; singular masculine nominative from laetus, laeta	
-um, laetior -or -us, laetissimus -a -um	
manē: morning	
mānsērunt: they have remained; 3rd person plural perfect	
active from maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus	
moriēris: you will die; 2nd person singular future from morior, mori, mortuus	
mōs: manner, custom; singular masculine nominative from mōs, mōris	
nēquissimum: the very worst, singular masculine accusative	
from nēquissimus -a -um (superlative of nēquam, worst)	
niſi: if not, unless	
nōn: not	
ōrārent: they prayed; 3rd person plural imperfect active	
subjunctive from ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātūs	
ortum: rising, beginning; singular masculine accusataive from	

34 Solitō¹ ex mōre suprādictus adfuit servus et dīxit illī sānctus Germānus: 'cavē, nē ūnus homō maneat dē hominibus tuīs in istā nocte in arce'. Et ipse reversus est in arcem et dēdūxit filiōs suōs, quōrum numerus erat novem, et ipsī ad suprā dictum hospitium cum ipsō reversī sunt. Et praecēpit sānctus Germānus manēre² eōs ieūnōs et clausīs iānuīs dīxit: vigilantēs ēstote et sī quid³ ēvēnerit in arce, nōlīte aspicere, sed ūrāte indēsinenter et ad Deum vestrum clāmāte. Et post modicum intervāllum noctis ignis dē caelō cecidit et combussit arcem et omnēs hominēs, quī cum tyrannō erant, et nusquam appāruērunt usque in hodiernum diem, et arx nōn aedificāta est usque⁴ hodiē.

¹Per the usual custom, the aforementioned slave (the doorkeeper of the citadel) was present.

²And Saint Germanus ordered them to remain fasting and, having closed the doors, said.

³Be vigilant and, whatever happens in the citadel, do not look, but pray unceasingly and cry out to your God. The injunction not to look upon the destruction of the evil place is reminiscent of the destruction of Sodom.

⁴The citadel wasn't rebuilt, all the way up until today.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adfuit: he was present; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus
 aedificāta: aedificāta est = it was (re)built; singular feminine
 nominative perfect passive participle from aedificō,
 aedificāre, aedificāvi, aedificātus
 appāruerunt: they appeared; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from appārēo, appārēre, appārui, appāritus
 arce: citadel; singular feminine ablative from arx, arcis
 arcem: citadel; singular feminine accusative from arx, arcis
 arx: citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx, arcis
 aspicere: to look at, to contemplate; person present active
 from aspicō, aspicere, aspēxi, aspectus
 caelō: heaven, sky; singular masculine ablative from caelus,
 caeli
 cavē: Beware!; singular masculine imperative from caveō,
 cavēre, cāvī, cautus
 cecidit: he fell; 3rd person singular perfect active from cadō,
 cadere, cecidi, cāsus
 clāmāte: shout!; plural imperative from clāmāre
 clausīs: having been closed; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus
 combusit: it burned up; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 combūrō, combūrere, combussī, combustus
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dēdūxit: he lead out; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 dēducō, dēducere, dēdūxi, dēductus
 Deum: god; singular masculine accusative from Deus, Dei
 dictum: suprā dictum = above said;
 diem: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diēi
 dīxit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō,
 dīcere, dīxi, dīctus
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fūi, futūrus
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fūi, futūrus
 estōte: be! (in the future); 2nd person plural future active
 imperative from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus
 et: and
 ēvēnerit: it happened; 3rd person singular perfect active
 subjunctive from ēveniō, ēvenīre, ēvēni, ēventus
 ex: out of, from
 filiōs: sons; plural masculine accusative from filius, filī
 Germānus: Saint Germanus
 hodiē: today
 hodiernum: today; singular neuter accusative from hodiernus,
 hodierna, hodiernum
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine accusative from homō,
 hominis
 hominibus: persons, men; plural masculine ablative from homō,
 hominis
 homō: person; singular masculine nominative from homō,
 hominis
 hospitium: place for receiving strangers; singular neuter
 accusative from hospitium, hospitia
 iānuis: doors; plural feminine ablative from iānua, iānuae
 iēiūnōs: fasting; plural masculine accusative from jējūnus,
 jējūna -um, jējūnior -or -us, jējūnissimus -a -um
 ignis: fire; singular masculine nominative from ignis, ignis
 illi: to him; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 indēsinenter: incessantly, ceaselessly
 intervallum: interval; singular neuter accusative from
 intervallum, intervalli
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 ipsī: they themselves; plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 ipso: itself; singular masculine or neuter ablative from ipse,
 ipsa, ipsum
 istā: this; singular feminine ablative from iste, ista, istud
 maneat: he remains; 3rd person singular present active
 subjunctive from maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 manēre: to remain; present infinitive from maneō, manēre,
 mānsi, mānsus
 modicum: a little; singular neuter accusative or accusative from
 modicum, modica
 mōre: manner, custom; singular masculine ablative from mōs,
 mōris
 nē: not
 nocte: night; singular feminine ablative from nox, noctis
 noctis: nights; singular feminine genitive from nox, noctis
 nōlīte: be unwilling! Don't! imperative plural of nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi
 (irr.)
 nōn: not
 novem: nine; from novem, nonus -a -um, noveni -ae -a, novie (n)s
 numerus: number; singular masculine nominative from
 numerus, numerī

35 In crāstinō diē ille vir, quī hospitālis fuit illīs, crēdidit et baptīzātus est cum omnibus filiīs suīs et omnīs rēgiō cum eīs, cui nōmen erat Catel. Et benedīxit eī et addidit et dīxit: nōn dēficiet¹ rēx dē sēmine tuō. Ipse est Catell² Durnlūc, et tū rēx eris ab hodiernā diē. Et sīc ēvenit; et implētum est, quod dictum est per prophētam³ dīcentem: 'suscitāns dē pulvere egēnum, et dē stercore ērigēns pauperem, ut sedeat cum prīcipibus et solium glōriae teneat.' Iūxtā verba sānctī Germānī rēx dē servō factī sunt, et ā sēmine illōrum omnis regiō Povīsōrum regitur usque in hodiernum diem.

¹A king will not lack from your offspring.

²He himself is Catell Durnllūc, and you will be king from this day. It appears the servant's name is Catel, he is made king, and is told that his son Catell Durnlūc will be king after him.

³This is a quote from 1 Samuel 2:8, in a prayer Hannah makes after giving birth to Samuel.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 addidit: he added; 3rd person singular perfect active from addō, addere, addidi, additus
 baptizātus: baptizātus est = he was baptized
 benedixit: he blessed; 3rd person singular perfect active from benedicō, benedicere, benedixi, benedictus
 Catel: the name of the servant who became king
 Catel: Catell Durnluc: the son of the servant who became king
 crāstīnō: tomorrow; singular masculine ablative from crāstīnus, crāstīna, crāstīnum
 crēdīdit: he believed; 3rd person singular perfect active from credo, credere, credidi, creditus
 cui: who; singular dative from quis
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dēficiet: he will lack; 3rd person singular future from dēficiō, dēficere, dēfeci, dēfectus
 dīcentem: saying; singular common accusative present participle from dīcō, dīcere, dīxi, dīctus
 dictum: dictum est = was said
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēī
 diem: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diēī
 dīxit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dīcō, dīcere, dīxi, dīctus
 Durnluc: Catell Durnluc: the son of the servant who became king
 egēnum: poor man; singular neuter accusative from egēnus, egēna, egēnum
 eī: him, her, or it; singular dative from is, ea, id
 eīs: to them; plural dative or ablative from is, ea, id
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
 ērigēns: raising, building; singular nominative present participle from ērigo, ērigere, ērēxi, ērēctus
 eris: you will be; 2nd person singular future active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
 et: and
 ēvēnit: it happened; 3rd person singular present active from ēveniō, ēvenire, ēvēni, ēventus
 factū: factū sunt = was made
 filiī: sons; plural masculine ablative from filius, fili
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
 Germānī: Germans
 glōriae: of glory, fame, honor; singular feminine genitive from glōria, glōriæ
 hodiernā: today; singular feminine ablative from hodiernus, hodierna, hodiernum
 hodiernum: today; singular neuter accusative from hodiernus, hodierna, hodiernum
 hospitālis: hospitable; singular common nominative from hospitālis, hospitālis, hospitāle
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illīs: those; plural dative from ille, illa, illud
 illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud
 implētūm: implētūm est = was fulfilled
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 iūxtā: according
 nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōn: not
 omnībus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 omnis: all, every; singular plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 pauperem: poor; singular common accusative from pauper, pauperis (gen.), pauperior -or -us, pauperrimus -a -um
 per: through
 prīncipibus: princes; plural masculine ablative from prīnceps, prīncipis
 prophētam: prophet; singular masculine accusative from prophēta, prophētae
 Povisōrum: of Powys, a region in Wales
 pulvēre: dust, arena; singular masculine ablative from pulvis, pulveris
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 regiō: region; singular masculine ablative from regius, regia, regium
 regitur: is ruled; 3rd person singular present passive from regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 sāctū: holy
 sedeat: he sits; 3rd person singular present active subjunctive from sedeō, sedēre, sēdi, sessus

sēmine: offspring, descendants; singular neuter ablative from sēmen, sēminis
 servō: servant; singular masculine ablative from servus, servī
 sīc: thus
 solium: throne; plural masculine genitive from solium, solī
 stercore: dung; singular masculine ablative from stercus, stercoris
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 suscītāns: awakening, stirring up; singular nominative present participle from suscītō, suscītāre, suscītāvī, suscītātus
 teneat: he holds; 3rd person singular present active subjunctive from teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentus
 tu: you; (pronoun)
 tuō: your; singular masculine dative from tuus, tua, tuum
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 verba: word; plural neuter accusative from verbum, verbī
 vir: man; singular masculine nominative from vir, virī

36 Factum est autem postquam mētātī¹ sunt Saxonēs in suprā dictā īnsulā Tanet, prōmīsit rēx suprā dictus darī illīs vīctum et vestīmentum absque dēfectiōne; et placuit illīs, et ipsī prōmīsērunt expugnāre inimīcōs eius fortiter. At illī barbarī cum multiplicātī essent numerō, nōn potuērunt Brittōnēs cibāre illōs. Cum postulārent cibum et vestīmentum, sīcut prōmissum erat illīs, dīxērunt Brittōnēs: nōn possumus dare vōbīs cibum et vestīmentum, quia numerus vester multiplicātus est, sed recēdite ā nōbīs, quia auxiliō vestrō nōn indigēmus². Et ipsī cōnsilium fēcērunt cum maiōribus suīs, ut pācem disrumperent.

¹*It happened, however, after (the new lands for) the Saxons were measured off in the above-said island Thanet, the above-said king (Guorthigirn/Vortigern) promised to give to them food and clothing so long as they didn't rebel.*

²*Because we do not need your help.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 absque: but for, without
 at: and
 autem: but, however, moreover
 auxiliō: help, aid; singular neuter dative from auxilium, auxiliū
 barbarī: barbarians; singular masculine genitive from barbarus
 barbara -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -a -um
 Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine
 nominative from Brittō, Brittōnīs
 cibāre: to feed; 2nd person singular imperfect passive from
 cibō, cibāre, cibāvī, cibātū
 cibū: food; singular masculine accusative from cibus, cibī
 cōnsilium: plan, advice, council; singular neuter accusative from
 consilium, consili(i)
 cum: with
 dare: to give; present infinitive from dō, dare, dedī, datus
 dari: to be given; passive infinitive from dō, dare, dedī, datus
 dēfēctiōne: defection, revolt; singular feminine ablative from
 dēfēctiō, dēfēctiōnīs
 dictā: having been said; singular feminine nominative perfect
 passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 dictus: having been said; singular masculine nominative perfect
 passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 disrumpēnt: they shattered; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active subjunctive from disrumpō, disrumpere, disrūpī
 disruptus
 dīxērunt: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from dīcō,
 dīcere, dīxi, dīctus
 eius: his/her/its
 et: and
 expugnāre: to assault, to storm, to conquer; person present
 active from expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, expugnātus
 factum: factum est = it happened
 fēcērunt: they did, they made; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 fortiter: strongly (adverb from fortis, forte)
 illi: those; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 indigēmus: we lack; 1st person plural present active from
 indigē, indigere, indigū, -
 inimicōs: enemies; plural masculine accusative from inimicus,
 inimica -um, inimicior -or -us, inimicissimus -a -um
 īsulā: island; singular feminine ablative from īsula, īsulae
 ipsī: they themselves; plural masculine nominative from ipse,
 ipsa, ipsum
 maiōribus: elders; plural ablative from māgnus, māgna -um,
 major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mētātī: mētātī sunt = they were measured off
 multiplicātī: having been multiplied; plural masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from multiplicō,
 multiplicāre, multiplicāvī, multiplicātus
 multiplicātūs: having been multiplied; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from multiplicō,
 multiplicāre, multiplicāvī, multiplicātus
 nōbīs: us; singular dative or ablative from ego
 nōn: not
 numerō: number; singular masculine ablative from numerus,
 numeri
 numerus: number; singular masculine nominative from
 numerus, numerī
 pācēm: peace; singular feminine accusative from pāx, pācis
 placuit: it pleased; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 placeō, placēre, placū, placitus
 possumus: we are able to; 1st person plural present active from
 possum, posse, potuī, -
 postquam: since, since then, after
 postulārēnt: they demanded; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 subjunctive from postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus
 potuērunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from possum, posse, potuī, -
 prōmīsērunt: they promised; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmīsi, prōmissus
 prōmīsīt: he promised; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmīsi, prōmissus
 prōmissum: prōmissum erat = had been promised;
 quia: because
 recēdīte: withdraw!; 2nd person plural present active
 imperative from recēdō, recēdere, recessī, recessus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Saxonēs: The Saxons
 sed: but
 sicut: as, same as, like
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 supra: over, above, beyond, before
 Tanet: the island of Thanet, which laid off the southeast coast of
 England. It is now a peninsula, not an island.
 ut: so that

vester: your; singular masculine nominative from vester, vestra,
 vestrum
 vestimentum: clothing; singular neuter accusative from
 vestimentum, vestimenti
 vestrō: your; neuter dative from vester
 vīctūm: food; singular masculine accusative from vīctus, vīctūs
 vōbīs: you; plural dative from tu

37 Hengistus autem, cum esset vir doctus atque astūtus et callidus, cum explorāsset¹ super rēgem inertem et super gentem illīus, quae sine armīs ūtēbātur, initō cōsiliō dīxit ad rēgem Brittanicum: paucī sumus; sī vīs, mittēmus ad patriam nostram et invītēmus mīlitēs dē mīlitibus regiōnis nostrarē, ut ampliō sit numerus ad certandum prō tē et prō gente tuā. Et ille imperāvit ut facerent, et mīsērunt, et legātī trānsfretāvērunt trāns Tithicam² vallem, et reversī sunt cum ciulīs sēdecim, et mīlitēs ēlēctī vēnērunt in illīs, et in ūnā ciulā ex eīs vēnit puella pulchra faciē atque decorōsa valdē, filia Hengistī.

¹*Having had examined the weak king and his people, that they were without weapons.*

²*And the delegation crossed over the English channel. Tithis can mean a sea nymph or the sea, so the "sea valley" described here is the English channel, since they are crossing from England to Germany in order to bring over more Saxons.*

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 amplior: ampler, larger; singular common nominative from
 amplus, ampla -um, amplior -or -us, amplissimus -a -um
 armis: weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armī
 astūtus: astute, sly; singular masculine nominative from astūtus,
 astūta -um, astūtior -or -us, astūtissimus -a -um
 atque: and
 autem: but, however, moreover
 callidus: clever, crafty; singular masculine nominative from
 callidus, callida -um, callidior -or -us, callidissimus -a -um
 certandum: fighting; singular neuter accusative gerund from
 certō, certāre, certāvī, certātus
 ciulā: longship; singular feminine nominative variant spelling
 from ceola, ceolae
 ciulīs: longship; plural feminine ablative variant spelling from
 ceola, ceolae
 cōnsiliō: plan, advice, council; singular neuter ablative from
 consilium, consiliī
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 decorōsa: elegant; alternative spelling from decōrus -a -um
 dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō,
 dicere, dixi, dictus
 doctus: learned, knowledgeable; singular masculine nominative
 from doctus -a -um
 eīs: to them; plural dative or ablative from is, ea, id
 élēctī: chosen; plural masculine nominative perfect passive
 participle from éligiō, éligere, élēgi, élēctus
 eset: he (might) have been; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active subjunctive from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus
 et: and
 ex: out of, from
 explōrāsset: he had examined; 3rd person singular pluperfect
 active subjunctive from explōrō, explōrāre, explōrāvī,
 explōrātus
 facerent: they did; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 subjunctive from faciō, facere, fēci, factus
 faciē: shape, figure, appearance, look; singular feminine
 ablative from facies, faciēi
 filia: daughter; singular feminine nominative from filia, filiae
 gente: people, clan, nation; singular feminine ablative from
 gēns, gentis
 gentem: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from
 gēns, gentis
 ille: that one; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illis: those; plural ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 imperāvit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inertem: weak, unskillful; singular common accusative from
 iners, inertis (gen.), inertior -or -us, inertissimus -a -um
 initō: having been started; ablative past passive participle from
 inīre
 invitēmus: we invite; 1st person plural present active
 subjunctive from invitō, invitāre, invitāvī, invitātus
 lēgātī: legates; plural masculine nominative from lēgātus, lēgātī
 militēs: soldiers; plural masculine nominative from miles, militis
 militib⁹: soldiers; plural masculine ablative from miles, militō,
 mīsērunt: they sent; 3rd person plural perfect active from mittō,
 mittere, mīsi, missus
 mittēmus: we will send; 1st person plural future active from
 mittō, mittere, mīsi, missus
 nostrae: our; singular feminine genitive of noster
 nostram: our; plural genitive of ego
 numerus: number; singular masculine nominative from
 numerus, numerī
 patriam: father; singular feminine accusative from patria,
 patriae
 pauci: few, little; plural masculine nominative from paucus,
 pauci
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 puella: girl; singular feminine nominative from puella, puellae
 pulchra: beautiful; singular feminine nominative from pulcher,
 pulchra -um, pulchrior -or -us, pulcherrimus -a -um
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 rēgēm: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
 regiōnis: regions; singular feminine genitive from regiō,
 regiōnis
 reversi: reversi sunt = they returned
 sēdecim: 16
 sī: if
 sine: without
 sit: it (might) be; 3rd person singular present active subjunctive
 from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus
 sumus: we are; 1st person plural present active from sum, esse,
 fūi, futūrus
 super: above, on top of
 tē: to you, accusative from tu

trāns: across, beyond
 trānsfretāvērunt: they passed over, ferried; 3rd person plural
 perfect active from trānsfretō, trānsfretāre, trānsfretāvī,
 trānsfretātus
 tuā: you; singular feminine ablative from tuus, tua, tuum
 ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a
 -um, singuli -ae -a, semel
 Brittanicum: Brittainic
 Hencistī: Hengist, the Saxon captain
 Hencistus: Hengist, the Saxon captain
 Tithicam: the sea
 ut: so that
 ūtēbātū: they were using/had
 valdē: very
 vallem: valley; singular feminine accusative from valles, vallis
 vēnērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 vēnīt: she came; 3rd person singular perfect active from veniō,
 venire, vēnī, ventus
 vir: man; singular masculine nominative from vir, virī
 vīs: you want; 2nd person singular present active from volō,
 velle

Postquam autem vēnissent ciulae, fēcit Hencgistus convīvium Guorthigirnō et mīlitibus suīs et interpretī suō, quī vocātur Ceretic et puellam iussit ministrāre illīs vīnum et siceram et inēbriātī¹ sunt et saturātī sunt nimis. Illīs² autem bibentibus intrāvit Satanās in corde Guorthigirnī, ut amāret puellam, et postulāvit eam ā patre suō per interpretem suum et dīxit: omne quod postulās ā mē impetrābis, licet³ dīmidium rēgnī meī. Et Hencgistus, initō cōnsiliō cum suīs seniōribus, quī vēnērunt sēcum dē īsulā Oghgul, quid peterent rēgī prō puellā, ūnum cōnsilium cum illīs omnibus fuit, ut peterent regiōnem, quae in lingūā eōrum vocātur Canturguorale, in nostrā autem Chent. Et dedit illīs Guoyrancgōnō rēgnante in Cantiā et īscius⁴ erat, quia rēgnum ipsīus trādēbātur pāgānīs et ipse sōlus in potestātem illōrum clam dari, et sīc data est puella illī in coniugium et dormīvit cum eā et amāvit eam valdē.

¹And he ordered the girl to minister to them wine and beer and they were very drunk and very full.

²Therefore, with them drinking, Satan entered into the heart of Vortigern.

³Up to half my kingdom. This is highly reminiscent of Mark 6:23, the party in which Herod got drunk, made a similar oath to the daughter of Herodius, and murdered John the Baptist.

⁴And it was unknown that he betrayed his kingdom to the pagans and he himself alone was secretly to be given into their power.

ā: from, out of, by, since	Oghgul: the name of an island from which Hengist's elders came
amāret: he loved; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from amō, amāre, amāvī, amātūs	omne: all, every; singular neuter accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
amāvit: he loved; 3rd person singular perfect active from amō, amāre, amāvī, amātūs	omnibus: all; plural dative or ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
autem: but, however, moreover	pāgānis: pagans; plural masculine dative from pāgānus, pāgāni
bibentibus: drinking; plural ablative present participle from bibō, bibere, bibi, pōtum	patre: father; singular masculine ablative from pater, patris
Cantiā: in Kent	per: through
Canturgovalen: modern-day Kent	peterent: they asked for; 3rd person plural imperfect active
Ceretic: the name of the interpreter	subjunctive from petō, petere, petīvī, petītus
Chent: modern-day Kent	postquam: since, since then, after
ciulae: longship; plural nominative variant spelling from ceola, ceolae	postulās: you ask for, demand; 2nd person singular present active from postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus
clam: secretly, stealthily, without the knowledge of	postulāvit: he asked for, demanded; 3rd person singular perfect active from postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus
coniugium: marriage; plural neuter accusative from coniugium, coniugī	potestātem: power; singular feminine accusative from potestās, potestātis
cōnsilium: plan, advice, council; singular neuter nominative from consilium, consiliū	prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
convivium: banquet, feast; singular neuter accusative from convivium, convivī	puella: girl; singular feminine nominative from puella, puellae
corde: heart; singular neuter ablative from cor, cordis	puellam: girl; singular feminine accusative from puella, puellae
cum: with	quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
dari: to be given; present passive infinitive from dō, dare, dedi, datus	qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
data: data est = was given; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from dō, dare, dedi, datus	quia: because
dē: of, from, away from, down from	quid: who; singular neuter nom. or acc. of quis
dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dō, dare, dedi, datus	quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
dīmidium: half; singular neuter nominative from dīmidium, dīmidī	rēgī: king; singular masculine dative from rēx, rēgīs
dīxit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dīcō, dīcere, dīxi, dīctus	rēgīōnem: region; singular feminine accusative from rēgiō, rēgiōnīs
dormīvit: he slept; 3rd person singular perfect active from dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī, dormītus	rēgnāntē: reigning; singular ablative present participle from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
ea: it; singular feminine nominative or plural neuter nom. or acc. from is, ea, id	rēgnī: of the kingdom; singular neuter genitive from rēgnūm, rēgnī
eam: her; singular feminine accusative from is, ea, id	rēgnūm: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēgnūm, rēgnī
eōrum: their; plural masc. or neuter. genitive	Satanās: Satan, adversary; singular masculine nominative from Satanas, Satanae
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	saturātī: having been sated, saturated; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from saturō, saturāre, saturāvī, saturātus
et: and	sēcum: with oneself
fēcit: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, fēci, factus	seniōribus: elders; plural ablative from senex, senis (gen.), senior -or -us, -
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	sīc: thus
Guorthigirnī: of Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (genitive case)	siceram: a type of alcoholic beverage, beer; singular feminine accusative from sicerā, sicerāe
Guorthigirno: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (dative or ablative case)	sōlus: alone; singular masculine nominative from sōlus, sōla, sōlūm (gen. -ius)
Guoyrancōnō: to Guoyranconus, a king who ruled in Kent	suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
Hengistus: Hengist, a Saxon leader	suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
illī: to him; singular dative from ille, illa, illud	suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
illīs: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud	trādēbātū: he was handed over; 3rd person singular imperfect passive from trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus
illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud	ūnum: one; singular neuter nominative from ūnūs -a -um, primus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
impetrābīs: you will obtain; 2nd person singular future active from impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātus	ut: so that
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	valdē: very
inēbriātī: having been made drunk; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from inēbriō, inēbriāre, inēbriāvī, inēbriātus	vēnērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
initō: having entered into; singular ablative past passive participle from inēō, inīre, inīl, initus	vēnīssent: they (might) have had come
īnscius: ignorant, unknown; singular masculine nominative from īnscius, īscia, īscium	vīnum: wine; singular neuter nominative from vīnum, vīnī
īnsulā: island; singular feminine ablative from īnsula, īnsulae	vocātū: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vōcō, vōcāre, vōcāvī, vōcātus
interpretēm: translator, broker; singular common accusative from interpres, interpretis	
interpretī: translator, broker; singular common dative or ablative from interpres, interpretis	
intrāvit: he entered; 3rd person singular perfect active from intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus	
ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum	
ipsīus: of itself; singular genitive from ipse, ipsa, ipsum	
iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus	
licet: allow	
linguā: tongue, language; singular feminine ablative from lingua, linguae	
mē: to me, accusative from ego	
meī: my; (pronoun)	
mīlitibus: soldiers; plural masculine dative or ablative from miles, mīlītis	
ministrāre: to serve, to attend to; present infinitive from ministrō, ministrāre, ministrāvī, ministrātus	
nimis: too much, extremely	
nostrā: our; singular feminine ablative from noster, nostra, nostrum	

38 Et dīxit Hencistus ad Guorthigirnum: ego sum pater tuus et cōsiliātor tuī, et nōlī praeterīre¹ cōsiliū umquam, quia nōn timēbis tē superārī ab ūllō homine neque ab ūllā gente, quia gēns mea valida est. Invītābō filium meum cum fratuelī suō, bellātōrēs enim virī sunt, ut dīmicent contrā Scottōs, et dā illīs regiōnēs, quae sunt in aquilōne iutxtā mūrum, quī vocātur Guaul. Et iussit ut invītāret eōs et invītāvit: Octha et Ebissa cum quadrāgintā ciulīs. At ipsī cum nāvigārent circā Pictōs, vastāvērunt Orcadēs īsulās et vēnērunt et occupāvērunt regiōnēs plūrimās ultrā mare Frenessicum usque ad confinum Pictōrum. Et Hencistus semper ciūlās ad sē paulātim invītāvit, ita² ut īsulās ad quās vēnerant absque habitātōre relinquerent, et dum gēns illīus crēvisset et in virtūte et in multitūdine, vēnērunt ad suprā dictam cīvitātem Cantōrum.

¹*Don't pass over (my) counsel ever.*

²*So that the islands to which they had come they might leave without inhabitant.* Hengist was moving all his people from islands they had occupied onto the British mainland.

ab: from, out of, by, since	nōn: not
abs: from, out of, by, since	occupāvērunt: they seized, overtook, attacked; 3rd person plural perfect active from occupo, occupare, occupavi, occupatus
absque: without	Octha: Octha, a Saxon captain
ad: to, towards, at, according to	Orcades: The Orkney Isles, located off the northern coast of Scotland
aquilōne: north; singular masculine ablative from aquilō, aquilōnis	pater: father; singular masculine nominative from pater, patris
at: and	paulātim: little by little
bellātōrēs: fighters; plural masculine nominative from bellātor, bellātōris	Pictōrum: of the Picts
Cantōrum: of Kent	Pictōs: Picts, a Scottish tribe;
circā: around, about, concerning	plūrimās: very many; plural feminine accusative from multus, multa -um, - plūrimus -a -um
ciulās: longships; plural feminine accusative variant spelling from ceola, ceolae	praeterire: to pass by, neglect; present infinitive from praetereō, praeterire, praeteriv(i)ii, praeteritus
ciulīs: longship; plural feminine dative or ablative variant spelling from ceola, ceolae	quāgintā: 40
cīvitātem: civilization; singular feminine accusative from cīvitās, cīvitātis	quae: who; plural female nominative of quis
cōnfiniū: border; singular neuter accusative from confinium, confiniū	quās: who; plural female accusative of quis
cōnsiliātōr: counsellor, adviser; singular masculine nominative from cōnsiliātōr, cōnsiliātōris	quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
cōnsilium: plan, advice, council; singular neuter accusative from consilium, consiliū	quia: because
contrā: against, away from, facing	regiōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
crēvisset: he had increased, came forth; 3rd person singular pluperfect active subjunctive from cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētus	relinquerent: they left behind; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from relinquō, relinquere, reliqui, relictus
cum: when, with	Scottōs: the Scots
dā: give!; 2nd person singular present active imperative from dō, dare, dedi, datus	se: himself
dictam: suprā dictam = the above-said	semper: always
dimicēt: they might fight; 3rd person plural present active subjunctive from dīmīcō, dīmīcāre, dīmīcāvī, dīmīcātūs	sum: I am; 1st person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
dīxit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dīcō, dīcere, dīxi, dīctus	sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
dum: while, as long as, until	suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
Ebissa: Ebissa, a Saxon captain	superārī: to be overcome; passive infinitive from superō, superāre, superāvī, superātūs
ego: I: (pronoun)	suprā: over, above, beyond, before
enim: for, truly, really, indeed	tū: your
eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id	tē: to you, accusative from tu
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus	timēbīs: you will fear; 2nd person singular future active from timeō, timēre, timū, -
et: and	tuūs: your; singular masculine nominative from tuus, tua, tuum
filium: son; singular masculine accusative from filius, filī	ūlla: any; singular feminine nominative from ūllus, ūlla, ūllum (gen -ius)
fratūli: his brother/cousin. This wasn't in any dictionaries I consulted, but the meaning is clear from context. Nennius	ūllō: any; singular masculine ablative from ūllus, ūlla, ūllum (gen -ius)
Frenēscūm: the North Sea, which lies off the east coast of England, also known as the Frisian Sea. Nennius	ultrā: beyond, further
Interpretātūs spells it Fresicum.	umquam: ever
gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from gēns, gentis	ūsque: until, all the way, up until
gente: people, clan, nation; singular feminine ablative from gēns, gentis	ut: so that
Guaul: the Welsh (?) name of the wall the Romans built across Britain. This is likely Hadrian's Wall, which stood 12 feet tall and stretches 73 miles across northern England	valida: strong, healthy; singular feminine nominative from validus, valida, validum
Guorthigirnum: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (accusative case)	vāstāvērunt: they ravaged, they devastated; 3rd person plural perfect active from vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātūs
habitātōrēs: dweller; singular masculine ablative from habitātōr, habitātōris	vēnērāt: they had came
Hengistus: Hengist: a Saxon captain	vēnērātū: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
homine: person; singular masculine ablative from homō, hominis	virī: men; plural masculine nominative from vir, virī
illīs: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud	virtūtē: virtue, manliness, power; singular feminine ablative from virtūs, virtūtis
illīus: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud	vocātū: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātūs
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
insulās: islands; plural feminine accusative from insula, insulāe	
invītābō: I will invite; 1st person singular future active from invītō, invītāre, invītāvī, invītātūs	
invītārēt: he invited; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from invītō, invītāre, invītāvī, invītātūs	
invītāvīt: he invited; 3rd person singular perfect active from invītō, invītāre, invītāvī, invītātūs	
ipsī: they themselves; plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum	
ita: thusly	
iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus	
iuxtā: near, nearly	
mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris	
mea: my; singular feminine nominative from meus, mea, meum	
meum: my; singular neuter nominative from meus, mea, meum	
multitūdīne: multitude, great number; singular feminine ablative from multitūdō, multitūdīnis	
mūrūm: city wall; singular masculine accusative from mūrus, mūri	
nāvīgātēt: they sailed; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from nāvīgo, nāvīgāre, nāvīgāvī, nāvīgātūs	
neque: not, not either	
nōlī: be unwilling! imperative singular of nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi (irr.)	

39 Nam super omnia mala adiciēns Guorthigirnus accēpit filiam suī¹ uxōrem sibi, et peperit eī filium. Et hōc cum compertum esset ā sānctō Germānō, eum corripere vēnit cum omnī clērō Brittōnum. Et dum conventa esset magna synodus clēricōrum ac lāicōrum in ūnō conciliō, ipse rēx praemonuit² filiam suam, ut exīret ad conventum et ut daret filium suum in sinum Germānī et ut dīceret, quod ipse erat pater filiī, et mulier fēcit sīcūt erat ēdocta. Germānus autem eum benīgnē accēpit et dīcere coepit: pater tibi erō nec³ tē permittam, nisi mihi novācula cum forcipe pectineque dētūr et ad patrem tuum carnālem tibi dare licētur. Et obaudīvit puer et usque ad avum suum patrem carnālem Guorthigirnum perrēxit et puer illī dīxit: pater meus es, caput meum tondē et comam capitīs meī. Et ille siluit et tacuit et puerō respondēre nōluit, sed surrēxit et īrātus est valdē, ut ā faciē sānctī Germānī fugeret, et maledictus est et damnātus ā sānctō Germānō et omnī Brittōnum conciliō.

¹Now adding to all (his) evil (deeds), Vortigern took his daughter to be his wife, and she bore a son to him. The theme of illegitimate or questionable paternity is recapitulated later in the account of Ambrosius, who is said to have had no father.

²The king himself commanded his daughter to go out to the meeting, that she should give his son into the lap of Germanus and should say that he (Germanus) himself was the father of the child, and the woman did just as she had been told.

³I will be your father, yet I will not permit you, unless a knife with scissors and a comb is given to me and you are permitted to give them to your biological father. Note: a more literal translation might be: I will be your father and will not let you go, unless I am given a knife with forceps and a comb and it is permitted to you to give them to your biological father. It appears that Saint Germanus, after having been falsely accused of fathering the child, says he will accept the child but that the child's biological father must first permit the child to be tonsured and therefore accepted into Germanus's religious order. This deflects the accusation and convinces the son to identify his biological father, exposing Vortigern's lie. Nennius *Interpretātus* glosses the passage as: *Germānus accēpit et dīxit pūrō: pater tibi erō. Et poscēbat Germānus novāculam et forcipem et pecten, ut daret ea in manū puerī. Et factum est et dīxit Germānus: ō filī, dā haec in manū patris tuī carnālis; et surrēxit puer et dedit pecten et forcipem et novaculum in manū Guorthigirnī et dīxit: pater mī, inquit, tondē mē, nam tū es pater meus carnālis, Germānus autem pater meus ē fide. Guorthigernum puduit et īrātus est valdē et effūgit ē conventū et omnēs Britōnēs maledīxērunt eī et Germānus damnāvit eum.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ac: and
 accēpit: he took; 3rd person singular perfect active from accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adiciēns: adding, raising; singular nominative present participle from adicioō, adicere, adiēci, adiectus
 autem: but, however, moreover
 avum: progenitor; singular masculine accusative from avus, avī
 benīgnē: kind, good, friendly;
 Brittōnum: of the Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine genitive from Brittō, Brittōnis
 capitīs: head; singular neuter genitive from caput, capitīs
 caput: head; singular neuter nominative from caput, capitīs
 carnālēm: fleshly; singular common accusative from carnālis, carnālis, carnālē
 clēričōrum: clerics; plural masculine genitive from clēricus, clēričī
 clērō: clergy; singular masculine ablative from clērus, clēri
 coepit: he started; 3rd person singular present active from coepio, coepere, coepi, coeptus
 comam: hair; singular feminine accusative from coma, comae
 compertūm: having been discovered; participle from comperiō, comperire, comperi, compertus
 conciliō: council; singular neuter ablative from consilium, consiliī
 converta: having come together; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from conveniō, convenire, convēni, convenitus
 conventū: having come together; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from conveniō, convenire, convēni, convenitus
 corripere: to reproach; present infinitive from corripiō, corripere, corripuī, correptus
 cum: with
 damnātūs: damnātūs est = was condemned; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from damnō, damnāre, damnāvī, damnātūs
 dare: to give; present infinitive from dō, dare, dedi, datus
 daret: he gave; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from dō, dare, dedi, datus
 dētūr: is given; 3rd person singular present passive subjunctive from dō, dare, dedi, datus
 dīcere: to say; present infinitive active from dicō, dīcere, dīxi, dīctus
 dīceret: he (might) have been saying; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from dicō, dīcere, dīxi, dīctus
 dīxit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dīcere, dīxi, dīctus
 dum: while, as long as, until
 ēdocta: having been induced; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from ēdoceō, ēdocēre, ēdocuī, ēdoctus
 eī: to him, her, or it; singular dative from is, ea, id
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 erō: I will be; 1st person singular future active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 es: you are; 2nd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 exiret: she went out; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from exeō, exire, exiī, exitus
 faciē: shape, figure, appearance, look; singular feminine ablative from faciēs, faciēī
 fēcīt: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 filiām: daughter; singular feminine accusative from filia, filiae
 filiī: son; singular masculine genitive from filius, filiī
 filiū: son; singular masculine accusative from filius, filiū
 forciōpe: tongs, forceps; singular feminine ablative from forceps, forcipis
 fūgēret: he fled; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from fūgiō, fugere, fūgiī, fugitus
 Germāni: of Saint Germanus
 Germanō: by Saint Germanus
 Germanus: Saint Germanus
 Guorthigirnum: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (accusative case)
 Guorthigirnus: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (nominative case)
 hōc: this; sing. masc. or neut. abl. of hic, haec, hoc
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illī: that; singular dative or plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 īrātūs: angry; singular masculine nominative from īrātūs -a -um
 lāicōrum: layman, one not belonging to the priesthood/in

orders; plural masculine genitive from lāicus, lāicī
 licetūr: it is permitted, one may; it is all right, lawful, allowed, permitted; 3rd person singular present passive from licet, licere, licuit, licitus est
 māgna: large; singular feminine nominative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mala: evil, bad
 maledictus: maledictus est = was cursed
 meī: my; (pronoun)
 meūm: my; singular neuter nominative from meus, mea, meum
 meus: my; singular masculine nominative from meus, mea, meum
 mihi: to me
 mulier: woman; singular feminine nominative from mulier, mulieris
 nam: yes, truly
 nec: nor, not either
 nisi: if not, unless
 nōluit: he didn't want; 3rd person singular perfect active from nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi, -
 novācula: sharp knife, dagger; singular feminine accusative from novācula, novāculae
 obaudītū: he obeyed, listened to; 3rd person singular perfect active from obaudiō, obaudire, obaudiī, obauditus
 omnī: all, every; singular ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 omnia: all, every; plural neuter nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
 pater: father; singular masculine nominative from pater, patris
 patrem: father; singular masculine accusative from pater, patris
 pectīne: comb; singular masculine ablative from pecten, pectinis
 peperit: she gave birth; infinitive
 permittām: I will permit; 1st person singular present active subjunctive from permittō, permittere, permīsī, permīssus
 perrēxit: he proceeded; 3rd person singular perfect active from pergō, pergere, perrēxi, perrēctus
 praemonuit: he commanded, forewarned; 3rd person singular perfect active from praemoneō, praemonēre, praemonūi, praemonitus
 puer: boy; singular masculine nominative from puer, puerī
 puerō: boy; singular masculine dative from puer, puerī
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 respondērē: to respond; present infinitive from respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 sānctī: holy
 sānctō: holy
 sed: but
 sibi: to himself; singular dative of se
 sicut: as, same as, like
 siluit: he was silent; 3rd person singular perfect active from sileō, silere, siluī, -
 sinū: pocket, fold; singular masculine accusative from sinus, sinūs
 suām: her; singular feminine acc. from suus
 suī: of him; singular or plural genitive of se
 super: above, on top of
 surrēxit: he got up; 3rd person singular perfect active from surgō, surgere, surrēxi, surrēctus
 suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
 synodus: synod (a religious council); singular masculine nominative from synodus, synodi
 tacuit: he was silent; 3rd person singular perfect active from taceō, tacere, tacuī, tacitus
 tē: to you, accusative from tu
 tibi: to you, singular dative of tu
 tondē: cut! shear!; 2nd person singular present active imperative from tondēō, tondēre, totondī, tōnsus
 tuum: your; singular neuter nominative from tuus, tua, tuum
 ūnō: one; singular masculine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a -um, singuli -ae -a, semel
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 uxōrem: wife; singular feminine accusative from uxor, uxōris
 valdē: very
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēni, ventus

40 Et posteā rēx ad sē invītāvit magōs suōs, ut quid faceret ab eīs interrogāret. At illī dīxēre: in extrēmīs finēs rēgnī tuī vāde et arcem mūnītam inveniēs, ut tū dēfendēs; quia gēns, quam suscēpistī¹ in rēgnō tuō, invidet tibi et tē per dolum occīdet et ūniversās regiōnēs, quās amārās, occupābit cum tuā ūniversā² gente post mortem tuam. Et posteā ipse cum magīs suīs arcem adipīscī³ vēnit et per multās regiōnēs multāsque prōvinciās circumdedērunt et illīs nōn invenientibus⁴ ad regiōnem, quae vocātur Guined, novissimē pervēnērunt; et illō lūstrante⁵ in montibus Herērī tandem in ūnō montium locum, in quō aptum erat arcem condere, adeptus est.

¹*Which you received into your kingdom.* The people this refers to is the Saxons, whom Vortigern let in via Hengist and Horsa.

²*And all the regions, which you love, they will occupy with their whole people after your death.* The verb is singular because gēns is a singular noun that refers to the whole Saxon people.

³*And afterwards he himself with his magicians came to find/obtain the citadel/castle.*

⁴*And they not finding (the castle) at last came to the region which is called Gwynedd.*

⁵*And to that one he obtained, examining in the mountains of Hererus finally one place of the mountains, in which it was suitable to build a castle.*

ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adeptus: adeptus est = he obtained, found; singular masculine
 nominative perfect participle from adipiscor, adipisci,
 addeptus sum
 adipisci: to gain, obtain, find; infinitive from adipiscor, adipisci,
 addeptus sum
 amārās: you had loved; 2nd person singular pluperfect active
 from amō, amāre, amāvi, amātus
 aptum: ready, apt;
 arcem; castle, citadel; singular feminine accusative from arx,
 arcis
 arx: castle, citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx, arcis
 at: and
 circumdedērunt: they surrounded; 3rd person plural perfect
 active from circumdō, circumdare, circumdedi, circumdatus
 condere: to build, to found; present infinitive active from condō,
 condere, condidī, conditus
 cum: with
 défendēs: you will defend; 2nd person singular future active
 from défendō, défendere, défendī, défensus
 dixēre: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from dīcō,
 dīcere, dīxi, dictus
 dolum: trickery, deception; singular masculine accusative from
 dolus, dol
 eīs: to them; plural dative or ablative from is, ea, id
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 extrēmis: most exterior; plural ablative from extrēmus, -a -um
 faceret: he did; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive
 from faciō, facere, fēci, factus
 finēs: boundaries, ends, limits; plural common accusative from
 finis, finis
 gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from
 gēns, gentis
 gente: people, clan, nation; singular feminine ablative from
 gēns, gentis
 Guined: Gwynedd, a region in Wales
 Herēri: of Hererus (?), an unknown mountain range
 illi: these; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illō: to him; singular masculine or neuter ablative from ille, illa,
 illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 interrogāret: he asked; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 subjunctive from interrogō, interrogāre, interrogāvī,
 interrogātus
 invenientibus: finding; plural ablative present participle from
 invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 inveniēs: you will find; 2nd person singular future active from
 invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 invidet: they envy; 3rd person singular present active from
 invideo, invidēre, invidī, invīsus
 invitāvit: he invited; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 invitō, invitāre, invitāvī, invitātus
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 locum: place; singular masculine accusative from locus, locī
 lūstrante: examining; singular ablative present participle from
 lūstrō, lūstrāre, lūstrāvī, lūstrātus
 magīs: magicians; plural masculine ablative from magus, magī
 magōs: magicians; plural masculine accusative from magus,
 magī
 montibus: mountains; plural masculine ablative from mōns,
 montis
 montium: of mountains; plural masculine genitive from mōns,
 montis
 mortem: death; singular feminine accusative from mors, mortis
 multās: many; plural feminine accusative from multus, multa
 -um, -a, plūrimus -a -um
 mūnitam: fortified; singular feminine accusative from mūnītus -a
 -um
 nōn: not
 novissimē: finally
 occidet: they will kill; 3rd person singular future from occīdō,
 occidere, occidī, occīsus;
 occupābit: they will seize, overtake, attack; 3rd person singular
 future active from occupo, occupare, occupāvī, occupatūs
 per: through
 pervēnērunt: they arrived; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
 post: behind, after, since
 posteā: thereafter, later
 prōvinciās: provinces, commands; plural feminine accusative
 from prōvincia, prōvinciāe
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quam: how? how much?
 quās: who; plural female accusative of quis

quia: because
 quid: who; singular neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quō: in which; singular ablative of quis
 regiōnem: region; singular feminine accusative from regiō,
 regiōnis
 regiōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō,
 regiōnis
 rēgnī: of the kingdom; singular neuter genitive from rēgnū,
 rēgnī
 rēgnō: kingdom; singular neuter dative from rēgnū, rēgnī
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 se: himself
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 suōs: their; plural accusative of suus
 suscēpsti: you received; 2nd person singular perfect active
 from suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus
 tandem: finally
 tē: to you, accusative from tu
 tibi: to you, singular dative of tu
 tu: you; (pronoun)
 tuā: you; singular feminine ablative from tuus, tua, tuum
 tuam: your; singular feminine accusative from tuus, tua, tuum
 tuī: your; (pronoun)
 tuō: your; singular masculine ablative from tuus, tua, tuum
 ūniversā: whole, entire; singular feminine ablative from
 ūniversus, ūniversa, ūniversum
 ūniversās: whole, entire; plural feminine accusative from
 ūniversus, ūniversa, ūniversum
 ūnō: one; singular masculine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus
 -a -um, singuli -ae -a, semel
 ut: so that
 vāde: go!; 2nd person singular present active imperative from
 vādo, vādere, vāsī, -
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō,
 venire, vēni, ventus
 vocātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

Et magī ad illum dīxēre: arcem in istō locō fac, quia tūtissima ā barbarīs gentibus in aeternum erit. Et ipse artificēs congregāvit, id est lapidicīnōs, et ligna et lapidēs congregāvit et cum esset congregatā omnīs māteriā, in ūnā nocte ablāta¹ est māteria. Et tribus vicibus iussit congregārī et nusquam² compāruit. Et magōs arcessīvit et illōs percūnctātus est, quae esset³ haec causa malitiae et quid hōc ēvēnerit. At illī respondērunt: nisi īfantem sine patre inveniēs et occīdētur ille et arx ā sanguine suō aspergātūr, numquam⁴ aedificābitur in aeternum.

¹*In one night the material was taken away.* What happened to the materials isn't said. Perhaps it was supernaturally spirited away. Given that there is a lake under the building site (see section 42) some commentators have suggested that they were trying to build a castle on a marsh and that the building materials sunk overnight, or that the walls were started but broke down due to the unstable ground.

²*It appeared nowhere.* Perhaps the materials were gathered once, disappeared, and then he ordered three times for them to be gathered, or perhaps there were three separate disappearances.

³*What might be the cause of the evil and what happened to it.*

⁴*It will never be built, ever.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ablāta: ablāta est = was carried away; past passive participle
 from auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aedificābitur: it will be built; 3rd person singular future passive
 from aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus
 aeternum: into the ages (literally eternal); singular neuter
 accusative from aeternus, aeterna -um, aeternior -or -us,
 aeternissimus -a -um
 arcessīvit: he summoned; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī, arcessitus
 artificēs: workers, artificers; plural common nominative from
 artifex, artificis
 arcem: castle, citadel; singular feminine accusative from arx,
 arcis
 arx: castle, citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx, arcis
 aspergātur: it is sprinkled; 3rd person singular present passive
 subjunctive from aspergō, aspergere, aspersi, aspersus
 at: and
 barbarīs: barbarous; plural ablative from barbarus, barbara
 -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -a -um
 causa: cause, reason; singular feminine nominative from causa,
 causae
 comparuit: it appeared, came in sight; 3rd person singular
 perfect active from compareo, comparere, comparui, -
 congregārī: to be gathered; passive infinitive from congregō,
 congregāre, congregāvī, congregātus
 congregātā: having been gathered; singular feminine ablative
 perfect passive participle from congregō, congregāre,
 congregāvī, congregātus
 congregāvit: he gathered; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from congregō, congregāre, congregāvī, congregātus
 cum: with
 dixēre: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from dīcō,
 dicere, dīxi, dictus
 erit: he will be; 3rd person singular future active from sum,
 esse, fūi, futūrus
 eset: he (might) have been; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active subjunctive from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fūi, futūrus
 et: and
 ēvēnerit: it happened; 3rd person singular perfect active
 subjunctive from ēvenīō, ēvenīre, ēvēni, ēventus
 fac: do! make!; 2nd person singular present active imperative
 from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 gentibus: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine ablative from
 gēns, gentis
 haec: this, these; singular feminine nominative of hic, haec, hoc
 hōc: this; neuter ablative of hic, haec, hoc
 id: it
 ille: he, that one; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa,
 illud
 illi: they; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 illum: that; singular feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 īfantem: infant; singular common accusative from īfāns,
 īfantis
 inveniēs: you will find; 2nd person singular future active from
 invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 istō: that; singular masculine or neuter ablative from iste, ista,
 istud
 iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō,
 iubēre, iussī, iussus
 lapidēs: stones; plural masculine accusative from lapis, lapidis
 lapidicinōs: masons, stone-smiths; this wasn't in any dictionary I
 consulted but the meaning is clear from context
 ligna: wood; plural neuter accusative from lignum, lignī
 locō: place; singular masculine ablative from locus, locī
 magī: magicians; plural masculine nominative from magus, magī
 magōs: magicians; plural masculine accusative from magus,
 magī
 malitiae: of malice; singular feminine genitive from malitia,
 malitiae
 māteriā: matter; singular feminine ablative from māteria,
 māteriae
 nīsī: unless
 nocte: night; singular feminine ablative from nox, noctis
 numquam: never
 nusquam: nowhere
 occidētur: he will be killed; 3rd person singular passive future
 from occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus;
 omnis: all, every; singular common ablative from omnis, omnis,
 omne
 patre: father; singular masculine ablative from pater, patris
 percūntātus: percūntātus est = he questioned strictly; variant

spelling from percontor, percontārī, percontātus
 quae: what; plural female nominative of quis
 quia: because
 quid: who; singular neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 respondērunt: they responded; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from respondeō, respondēre, respondi, responsus
 sanguine: blood; singular masculine ablative from sanguis,
 sanguinis
 sine: without
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
 tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um,
 terni -ae -a, ter
 tūtissima: very safe; singular feminine nominative from tūtus,
 tūta -um, tūtior -or -us, tūtissimus -a -um
 ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a
 -um, singuli -ae -a, semel
 vicibus: times; plural feminine ablative from vicis, vicis

41 Et ipse lēgātōs ex cōnsiliō magōrum per ūniversam Brittanniam mīsit, utrum
īnfantem sine patre invenīrent. Et lūstrandō omnēs prōvinciās regiōnēsque plūrimās
vēnēre ad campum Ellētī, quī est in regiōne, quae vocātur Glequissing, et pilae¹
lūdum faciēbant puerī. Et ecce duo inter sē lītigābant, et dīxit alter alterī: o homō
sine patre, bonum² nōn habēbis. At illī dē puerō ad puerōs dīligenter
percūntābantur, et cūnctantēs mātrem, sī patrem habēret. Illa negāvit et dīxit:
nesciō quōmodo in uterō meō conceptus est, sed ūnum sciō, quia virum nōn cognōvī
umquam, et iūrāvit illīs patrem nōn habēre. Et illī eum sēcum dūxēre usque ad
Guorthigirnum rēgem et eum īnsinuāvērunt regī.

¹*And boys were playing a game with a ball.*

²*O human without a father, you will not have good. This is an insult and a curse.*

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 alter: the one (boy); singular masculine nominative from alter, altera, alterum
 alterī: to the other; singular dative from alter, altera, alterum
 at: and
 bonum: good; singular neuter accusative from bonum, boni
 Brittanniā: Britān (accusative case)
 campū: field; singular masculine accusative from campus, campi
 cōgnōvī: I knew; 1st person singular perfect active from cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnōtus
 conceptus: conceptus est = was conceived; past passive participle from concipiō, concipere, concēpī, conceptus
 cōnsiliō: plan, advice, council; singular neuter ablative from cōsiliū, cōsiliū
 cunctantēs: questioning (literally delaying); plural common nominative participle from cunctō, cunctāre, cunctāvī, cunctātūs
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 diligenter: diligently
 dīxit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dīcō, dīcere, dīxi, dīctus
 duo: two
 dūxēre: they lead; 3rd person plural perfect from dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, dūctus
 ecce: Look! Behold!
 Ellētī: the name of a field in Glequissing
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus
 et: and
 eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 ex: out of, from
 faciēbant: they were doing, they were making; 3rd person plural imperfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 Glequissing: likely Glywysing, a petty kingdom in southwest Wales
 Guorthigirnum: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (accusative case)
 habēbis: you will have; 2nd person singular future active from habeo, habēre, habui, habitus
 habēre: to have; present infinitive active from habeo, habēre, habui, habitus
 habēret: he (might) have had; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from habeo, habēre, habui, habitus
 homō: person; singular masculine nominative from homō, hominis
 illa: she, that one; singular feminine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illi: those; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illis: to them; plural dative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 infantem: infant; singular common accusative from īfāns, īfantis
 īsinuāvērunt: they introduced, gave; 3rd person plural perfect active from īsinuō, īsinuāre, īsinuāvī, īsinuātus
 inter: between, among, during
 invenīrēt: they found; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 iūrāvit: he swore; 3rd person singular perfect active from juro, jurare, juravi, juratus
 lēgātōs: legate, ambassador; plural masculine accusative perfect passive participle from lego, legare, legavi, legatus
 litigābant: they quarrelled; 3rd person plural imperfect active from litigō, litigāre, litigāvī, litigātus
 lūdum: game; singular masculine accusative from lūdus, lūdī
 lūstrāndō: having examined; singular masculine ablative future passive participle from lūstrō, lūstrāre, lūstrāvī, lūstrātus
 magōrum: of magicians; plural masculine genitive from magus, magī
 mātrem: mother; singular feminine accusative from māter, mātris
 meō: my; singular neuter ablative from meus
 mīsit: he sent; 3rd person singular perfect active from mittō, mittere, mīsi, missus
 negāvit: she denied, refused; 3rd person singular perfect active from negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus
 nesciō: I don't know; 1st person singular present active from nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītus
 nōn: not
 ō: O (an interjection)
 omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
 patre: father; singular masculine ablative from pater, patris
 patrem: father; singular masculine accusative from pater, patris
 per: through
 percūntābantur: they were questioned strictly; variant spelling from percontor, percontārī, percontātūs
 pilae: ball; singular feminine genitive from pila, pilae

42 Et in crāstinō conventiō facta est, ut puer interficerētur. Et puer ad rēgem dīxit: 'Cūr virī tuī mē ad tē dētulērunt?' Cui rēx ait: 'Ut interficiāris et sanguis tuus circā arcem istam aspergētur, ut possit aedificārī.' Respondit puer rēgī: 'Quis tibi mōnstrāvit?' Et rēx: 'magī meī mihi dīxēre.' Et puer dīxit: 'Ad mē vocentur¹.' Et invītātī sunt magī et puer illīs dīxit: 'Quis revēlāvit vōbīs, ut ista arx ā sanguine meō aspergerētur²? Et nisi aspergerētur ā sanguine meō, in aeternum nōn aedificābitur? Sed hoc³ ut cognōscat is, quis mihi dē mē palam fēcit?' Iterum puer dīxit, 'Modo tibi, ō rēx, ēlūcubrābō⁴ et in vēritāte tibi omnia satagam; sed magōs tuōs percūnctor: quid in pavīmentō istīus locī est? Placet mihi, ut ostendant tibi, quid sub pavīmentō habētur.' At illī dīxēre: 'Nescīmus.' Et ille dīxit: 'Comperior: stāgnū in mediō pavīmentī est; venīte et fodite et sīc inveniētis.' Vēnērunt et fōdērunt, et ruit⁵. Et puer ad magōs dīxit: 'Prōferte mihi, quid est in stāgnō?' Et siluērunt et nōn potuērunt revēlāre illī. Et ille dīxit illīs: 'Ego vōbīs revēlābō; duo vāsa sunt et sīc inveniētis.' Vēnērunt et vīdērunt sīc. Et puer ad magōs dīxit: 'Quid in vāsīs conclūsīs habētur?' At ipsī siluērunt et nōn potuērunt revēlārī illī.

¹Let them be called to me. *vocentur* is a iussive subjunctive.

²Who revealed to you, that this castle should be sprinkled with my blood? The *should* comes from *aspergerētur* being a iussive subjunctive in this sentence (however, in the next sentence it is not a iussive subjunctive, but is subjunctive because it is in a conditional statement).

³But so that he might know this, who appointed me openly? The boy (Ambrosius) is challenging the magicians.

⁴Again the boy said: "Now to you, O king, I will burn the midnight oil and handle everything in truth for you."

⁵They came and dug, and it collapsed. Apparently there was an underground lake underneath where they were building; perhaps this explains where the building materials went.

ā: from, out of, by, since	meō: my; singular masculine or neuter dative or ablative from meus
ad: to, towards, at, according to	mihī: to me;(pronoun)
aedificābitur: it will be built; 3rd person singular future passive from aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus	modo: now, presently
aedificāri: to be built; passive infinitive from aedificō, aedificāre, mōnstrāvit: he pointed out; 3rd person singular perfect active from mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus	nescimus: we do not know; 1st person plural present active from nesciō, nescire, nescivī, nescitus
aeternum: in aeternum = ever (literally 'eternal'); singular neuter accusative from aeternus, aeterna -um, aeternior -or -us, aeternissimus -a -um	nisi: if not, unless
āit: he said; 3rd person singular present active from aio, -, -	nōn: not
arcem: castle, citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx, arcis	ō: O, an interjection
arx: citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx, arcis	omnia: everything; plural neuter accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
aspergerētur: it was sprinkled, inflicted; 3rd person singular imperfect passive subjunctive from aspergō, aspergere, aspersi, aspersus	ostendant: let them show; 3rd person plural present active subjunctive from ostendo, ostendēre, ostendi, ostensus
aspergētur: it will be sprinkled; 3rd person singular future passive from aspergō, aspergere, aspersi, aspersus	palam: openly, publicly
at: and	pavimenti: floor, pavement, tiling; singular neuter genitive from pavimentum, pavimenti
circā: around, about, concerning	pavimentō: floor, pavement, tiling; singular neuter ablative from pavimentum, pavimenti
cōgnōscat: he might know; 3rd person singular present active subjunctive from cognosco, cognoscere, cognovi, cognitus	percūctor: I question strictly; variant spelling from percontor, percontāri, percontātus
comperior: I ascertain; 1st person singular present passive (though from context, active) from comperio, comperire, comperi, compertus;	placet: it pleases; 3rd person singular present active from placeō, placēre, placui, placitus
conclūsī: having been enclosed; plural ablative perfect passive participle from conclūdō, conclūdere, conclusi, conclusus	possit: he (may) be able; 3rd person singular present active subjunctive from possum, posse, potui, -
conventiō: meeting of people; singular feminine nominative from conventiō, conventionis	potuērunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active from possum, posse, potui, -
crāstinō: tomorrow; singular masculine ablative from crāstinus, crāstina, crāstīnum	prōferē: bring forward!; 2nd person plural present active imperative from prōferō, prōferre, prōtuli, prōlātus
cui: whom; singular dative from quis	puer: boy; singular masculine nominative from puer, pueri
cūr: why	quid: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
dē: of, from, away from, down from	quis: who
dētulērunt: they brought, transferred; 3rd person plural perfect active from dēferō, dēferre, dētuli, dēlātus	rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
dīxēre: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from dīcō, dīcere, dīxi, dīctus	rēgī: king; singular masculine dative from rēx, rēgis
dīxit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dīcō, dīcere, dīxi, dīctus	respondit: he responded; 3rd person singular perfect active from respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus
duo: two	revēlābō: I will reveal; 1st person singular future active from revēlō, revēlāre, revēlāvī, revēlātus
ego: I;(pronoun)	revēlārē: to reveal; present infinitive from revēlō, revēlāre, revēlāvī, revēlātus
ēlucubrābō: I will burn the midnight oil; 1st person singular future active from ēlucubrō, ēlucubrāre, ēlucubrāvī, ēlucubrātus	revēlārī: to be revealed; passive infinitive from revēlō, revēlāre, revēlāvī, revēlātus
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus	revēlāvīt: he revealed; 3rd person singular perfect active from revēlō, revēlāre, revēlāvī, revēlātus
et: and	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
facta est = was made; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	ruit: it fell, collapsed; 3rd person singular present active from ruō, ruere, ruī, rūtus
fēcīt: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	sanguine: blood; singular masculine ablative from sanguis, sanguinis
fōdērunt: they dug; 3rd person plural perfect active from fōdī, fodēre, fōdī, fōssus	sanguīs: blood; singular masculine nominative from sanguis, sanguinis
fōdīt: dig!; 2nd person plural present active imperative from fōdī, fodēre, fōdī, fōssus	satagām: I will be handling everything (literally 'I will bustle about, have my hands full'); 1st person singular present active subjunctive from satagō, satagere, sategī, satāctus
habētūr: it is held; 3rd person singular present passive from habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus	sed: but
hoc: this; sing. masc. or neut. abl. of hic, haec, hoc	sic: thus
ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud	silērunt: they were silent; 3rd person plural perfect active from sileō, silēre, siluī, -
illi: that; singular dative or plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud	stagnō: swamp, pool; singular neuter ablative from stagnum, stagnī
illīs: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud	stagnū: swamp, pool; singular neuter nominative from stagnum, stagnī
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	sub: below, under
interficerētur: he might be killed; 3rd person singular imperfect passive subjunctive from interficio, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus	sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
interficiāris: you kill; 2nd person singular present passive subjunctive from interficio, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus	tē: to you, accusative from tu
invenītis: you will find; 2nd person plural future active from invenīo, invenīre, invenītus	tibi: to you, singular dative of tu
invitātū: invitātī sunt = were invited; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from	tuī: your;(pronoun)
ipsī: they themselves; plural masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum	tuōs: your; plural masculine accusative from tuus, tua, tuum
is: he; singular masculine nominative from is, ea, id	tuus: your; singular masculine nominative from tuus, tua, tuum
ista: this; singular feminine nom. or abl. or plural neuter nom. or acc. from iste, ista, istud	ut: so that
istam: that; singular feminine accusative from iste, ista, istud	vāsa: vessels; plural neuter nominative from vāsum, vāsī
istītūs: of this; singular genitive from iste, ista, istud	vāsīs: vessels; plural masculine ablative from vāsum, vāsī
iterum: again	vēnērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from venīo, venīre, vēnī, ventus
locī: place; singular masculine genitive from locus, locī	venītē: come!; infinitive
magī: magicians; plural masculine nominative from magus, magī	vēritātē: truth; singular feminine ablative from vēritās, vēritātis
magōs: magicians; plural masculine accusative from magus, magī	vīdērunt: they saw
mē: to me, accusative from ego	vīrī: men; plural neuter nominative from virus, viri
mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from medius, media, medium	vōbīs: you; plural dative or ablative from tu
meī: my;(pronoun)	vocētūr: let them be called; 3rd person plural present passive subjunctive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

At ille asseruit: 'In mediō eōrum tentōrium est, sēparāte ea et sīc inveniētis.' Et rēx sēparārī iussit et sīc inventum est tentōrium complicātum, sīcut dīixerat. Et iterum interrogāvit magōs eius: 'Quid in mediō tentōriī est? Et iam nunc nārrātē', et nōn potuērunt scīre. At ille revēlāvit: 'Duo vermēs in eō sunt, ūnus albus et ūnus rūfus; tentōrium expandite.' Et extendērunt et duo vermēs dormientēs inventī sunt. Et dīxit puer: 'Expectātē et cōsīderātē quid facient vermēs'; et coepērunt vermēs, ut alter¹ alterum expelleret, aliis autem scapulās suās pōnēbat, ut eum usque ad dīmidium tentōriī expelleret, et sīc faciēbant tribus vicibus: tamen tandem īfirmior vidēbātur vermis rūfus et posteā fortior albō fuit et extrā finem tentōriī expulit; tunc alter alterum secūtus trāns stāgnum est et tentōrium ēvānuit. Et puer ad magōs refert: 'Quid significat mīrābile hoc signum, quod factum est in tentōriō?' Et illī prōferunt: 'Nescīmus.' Et puer respondit: 'Ēn revēlātum est mihi hoc mystērium et ego vōbīs prōpalābō.'

¹*And the worms began (to fight), so that one might expel the other, however the other put his shoulders, so that he might expel him from half of the tent, and thus they did three times: however finally the red worm was seen to be weaker and afterwards was stronger than the white (worm) and expelled him outside the confines of the tent; then they followed each other across the pond and the tent vanished.*

ad: to, towards, at, according to	medium
albō: white; singular masculine ablative from albus, alba -um, albior -or -us, albissimus -a -um	mihī: to me;(pronoun)
albus: white; singular masculine nominative from albus, alba -um, albior -or -us, albissimus -a -um	mīrābile: marvelous, wonderful; singular neuter nominative from mīrābilis, mīrābilis, mīrābile
alius: other; singular masculine nominative from alius, alia, aliud	mystēriū: mystery; singular neuter nominative from mysterium, mysterii
alter: the other; singular masculine nominative from alter, altera, alterum	nārrātē: narrate!; plural imperative from nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvī, nārrātus
alterum: the other; singular neuter nominative from alter, altera, alterum	nescimus: we do not know; 1st person plural present active from nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītus
asseruit: he claimed; 3rd person singular perfect active from asserō, asserere, asseruī, assertus	nōn: not
at: and	nunc: now
autem: but, however, moreover	pōnēbat: it was placing; 3rd person singular imperfect from pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus
coepérunt: they started; from coepī, coepisse, coepī, coeptum	postēā: thereafter, later
complicātūm: folded up, rolled up; singular neuter accusative past passive participle from complicāre	potuērunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active from possum, posse, potuī, -
cōsiderātē: consider! plural imperative from cōsiderō, cōsiderāre, cōsiderāvī, cōsiderātus	prōferunt: they bring forward; 3rd person plural present active from prōferō, prōferre, prōtuli, prōlātus
dīmidūm: half; singular neuter accusative from dīmidium, dimidiū	prōpālābō: I will make visible, manifest; 1st person singular future active from propalo, propalare, -, propalatus
dīixerat: he had said; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus	puer: boy; singular masculine nominative from puer, puerī
dīxit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus	quid: who; singular neuter nom. or acc. of quis
dormientēs: sleeping; plural common nominative present participle from dormiō, dormire, dormīvī, dormitus	quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
duo: two	refert: he says, brings back (the conversation); 3rd person singular present active from referō, referre, rettuli, relātus
ea: them; plural neuter accusative from is, ea, id	respondit: he responded; 3rd person singular perfect active from respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus
ego: I;(pronoun)	revēlātūm: having been shown, revealed; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from
eiūs: his/her/its	revēlāvīt: he revealed; 3rd person singular perfect active from revēlō, revēlāre, revēlāvī, revēlātus
ēn: behold!	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
eō: in it; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id	rūfus: red, ruddy; singular masculine nominative from rūfus, rūfa -um, rūfior -or -us, rūfissimus -a -um
eōrūm: their; plural masc. or neuter. genitive	scapulās: shoulders, back; plural feminine accusative from scapula, scapulæ
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	scīre: to know; present infinitive from sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus
et: and	secūtūs: secūtus + est = he followed; from sequor, sequī
eum: him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id	sēparārī: to be divided, separated; passive infinitive from sēparō, sēparāre, sēparāvī, sēparātus
ēvānūt: it vanished; 3rd person singular perfect active from ēvānēscō, ēvānēscere, ēvānūi, -	sēparātē: divide! separate!; infinitive
expandēt: spread out! expand!; 2nd person plural present active imperative from expandō, expandere, expandi, expānsus	sīc: thus
expectātē: await!; plural imperative from expectō, expectāre, expectāvī, expectātus	sicut: as, same as, like
expelleret: he drove out, expelled; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus	significat: it signifies; 3rd person singular present active from significō, significāre, significāvī, significātus
expulit: he drove out, expelled; 3rd person singular perfect active from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus	signūm: sign; singular neuter nominative from signūm, signū
extendērunt: they stretched out; 3rd person plural perfect active from extendō, extendere, extendi, extensus	stagnūm: swamp, pool; singular neuter accusative from stagnū, stagnī
extrā: outside of, beyond	suās: their; plural accusative feminine of suus
faciēbant: they were doing, they were making; 3rd person plural imperfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
facient: they will do, they will make; 3rd person plural future active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	tamen: however
factūm: factūm est = was done; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	tandem: finally
finēm: boundary, end, limit; singular common accusative from finis, finis	tentōrī: tent; singular neuter genitive from tentorium, tentorī
fortior: stronger; singular common nominative from fortis, forte, fortior -or -us, fortissimus -a -um	tentōrīō: tent; singular neuter ablative from tentorium, tentorī
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	tentōrīum: tent; singular neuter nominative from tentorium, tentorī
hoc: this; singular neuter nominative of hic, haec, hoc	trāns: across, beyond;(preposition)
iam: already, now, soon	tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
ille: he, that one; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud	tunc: then
illi: they; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud	ūnus: one
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	ūsque: until, all the way, up until
infirmior: weaker; singular common nominative from infirmus, infirma -um, infirmior -or -us, infirmissimus -a -um	ut: so that
interrogāvīt: he asked; 3rd person singular perfect active from interrogō, interrogāre, interrogāvī, interrogātus	vermēs: worms; plural masculine nominative from vermis, vermis
inveniētēs: you will find; 2nd person plural future active from invenio, invenire, invenītus	vermis: worm; singular masculine nominative from vermis, vermis
inventū: having been found; singular masculine genitive perfect passive participle from inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus	viciūs: times; plural feminine ablative from vicis, vicis
inventūm: having been found; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus	vidēbātū: he was appearing; 3rd person singular imperfect passive from videō, vidēre, vidī, visus
iterum: again	vōbīs: you; plural dative or ablative from tu
iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus	
magōs: magicians; plural masculine accusative from magus, magī	
mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from medius, media,	

'Rēgnī tuī figūra tentōrium est; duo vermēs duo dracōnēs sunt; vermis rūfus dracō tuus est et stāgnū figūra huius mundī est. At ille albus dracō illīus gentis¹, quae occupāvit gentēs et regiōnēs plūrimās in Brittanniā, et paene ā marī usque ad mare tenēbunt, et posteā gēns nostra surget, et gentem Anglōrum trāns mare virīliter dēiciet. Tū tamen dē istā arce vāde, quia eam aedificāre nōn potes, et multās prōvinciās circumī, ut arcem tūtam inveniās, et ego hīc manēbō.' Et rēx adolēscentem dīxit: 'Quō nōmine vocārīs?' Ille respondit: 'Ambrosius vocor, id est, Embreis Guletic ipse vidēbātur.' Et rēx dīxit: 'Dē quā prōgeniē ortus es?' At ille: 'Ūnus est pater² meus dē cōnsulibus Rōmānicae gentis.' Et arcem dēdit illī³ cum omnibus rēgnīs occidentālis plāgāe Brittanniae et ipse cum magis suīs ad sinistrālem plāgam pervēnit et usque ad regiōnem, quā vocātur Guunnessī, adfuit et urbem ibī, quae vocātur suō nōmine Cair Guorthigirn, aedificāvit.

¹The white dragon represents the Anglo-Saxons.

²Here the boy says that he does have a father. Perhaps his mother was incorrect in stating that he had no father, perhaps the boy is making up an ancestry, or perhaps this account is an amalgamation of several stories.

³And he (Vortigern) gave the castle to him (Ambrosius) with all the kingdom of the western coast of Britain, and he himself with his magicians came to the northern coast up to the region which is called Guunnessī. I've chosen to gloss *sinistrālem* as *northern* to follow the scribe who wrote *Nennius Interpretātus*, apparently following a medieval convention of orienting maps with east at the top. The castle hadn't yet been built, so perhaps *arcem dēdit illī* means he gave him the building site and the materials. *Nennius Interpretātus* glosses this passage as: *Dedit igitur Guorthigirnus arcem Ambrosiō et rēgnum totius occidentālis Brittanniae et ipse cum suīs magīs ad septentriōnālem plāgam īinsulae Brittanniae pervēnit usque ad regiōnem cui est nōmen Guunis, et arcem ibī aedificāvit, cuius nōmen Caer Guorthigirn.*

ā: from, out of, by, since	occupāvit: he seized, attacked; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>occupo</i> , <i>occupare</i> , <i>occupavi</i> , <i>occupatus</i>
ad: to, towards, at, according to	omnibus: all; plural ablative from <i>omnis</i> , <i>omnis</i> , <i>omne</i>
adfuīt: he was present; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>adsum</i> , <i>adesse</i> , <i>adfuīt</i> , <i>adfuturus</i>	ortus: <i>ortus es</i> = you were born; from <i>orior</i> , <i>orīrī</i> , <i>ortus</i>
adolēscētēm: young man; singular masculine accusative from <i>adolēscēns</i> , <i>adolēscētis</i>	paene: almost
aedificārē: to build; present infinitive from <i>aedificō</i> , <i>aedificārē</i> , <i>aedificāvī</i> , <i>aedificātūs</i>	pater: father; singular masculine nominative from <i>pater</i> , <i>patris</i>
aedificāvīt: he built; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>aedificō</i> , <i>aedificārē</i> , <i>aedificāvī</i> , <i>aedificātūs</i>	pervēnīt: he arrives; 3rd person singular present active from <i>pervenīō</i> , <i>pervenire</i> , <i>pervēnī</i> , <i>perventus</i>
albus: white; singular masculine nominative from <i>albus</i> , <i>alba</i> -um, <i>albior</i> -or -us, <i>albissimus</i> -a -um	plāgē: of the coast; singular feminine genitive from <i>plāga</i> , <i>plāgē</i>
Ambrosiūs: Ambrosius (Merlinus)	plāgām: coast; singular feminine accusative from <i>plāga</i> , <i>plāgāe</i>
Anglōrum: of the Anglos, Englishmen; plural masculine genitive from <i>Anglus</i> , <i>Angli</i>	plūrīmās: very many; plural feminine accusative from <i>multus</i> , <i>multa</i> -um, <i>plūrīmus</i> -a -um
arce: castle, citadel; singular feminine ablative from <i>arx</i> , <i>arcis</i>	postēā: thereafter, later
arcem: castle, citadel; singular feminine accusative from <i>arx</i> , <i>arcis</i>	potes: you can; 2nd person singular present active from <i>possum</i> , <i>posse</i> , <i>potuī</i> , -
arx: castle, citadel; singular feminine nominative from <i>arx</i> , <i>arcis</i>	prōgeniē: race, family, progeny; singular feminine ablative from <i>prōgeniēs</i> , <i>prōgeniēi</i>
at: and	prōvīnciās: provinces; plural feminine accusative from <i>prōvīncia</i> , <i>prōvīnciae</i>
Brittanniā: in Britain	quā: what; singular female ablative of <i>qui</i>
Brittanniāe: Britain (nominative plural or genitive singular case)	quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of <i>quis</i>
Cair Guorthigirn: the name of a city that Vortigern built	quia: because
circumī: go around!; singular imperative from <i>circumeō</i> , <i>circumire</i> , <i>circumii</i> , <i>circumitus</i>	quō: what; singular ablative of <i>quis</i>
cōnsulibus: consuls; plural masculine ablative from <i>cōnsul</i> , <i>cōnsulis</i>	regiōnēm: region; singular feminine accusative from <i>regiō</i> , <i>regiōnis</i>
cum: with	regiōnēs: regions; plural feminine nominative or accusative from <i>regiō</i> , <i>regiōnis</i>
dē: of, from, away from, down from	rēgnī: of the kingdom; singular neuter genitive from <i>rēgnum</i> , <i>rēgnī</i>
dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>dō</i> , <i>dare</i> , <i>dedi</i> , <i>datus</i>	rēgnīs: kingdoms; plural neuter ablative from <i>rēgnum</i> , <i>rēgnī</i>
dēcīet: (our people) will cast out; 3rd person singular future active from <i>dēcīo</i> , <i>dēcīrē</i> , <i>dēcīēt</i> , <i>dēiectus</i>	respondīt: he responded; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>respondeō</i> , <i>respondērē</i> , <i>respondī</i> , <i>respōnsus</i>
dīxit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>dīcō</i> , <i>dīcere</i> , <i>dīxi</i> , <i>dīctus</i>	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from <i>rēx</i> , <i>rēgis</i>
dracō: dragon, snake; singular masculine nominative from <i>dracō</i> , <i>dracōnis</i>	Rōmānīcae: Romanic; singular feminine genitive from <i>Romanicus</i> , <i>Romanica</i> , <i>Romanicum</i>
dracōnēs: dragons, snakes; plural masculine nominative from <i>dracō</i> , <i>dracōnis</i>	rūfūs: red, ruddy; singular masculine nominative from <i>rūfūs</i> , <i>rūfa</i> -um, <i>rūfūr</i> -or -us, <i>rūfīssimus</i> -a -um
duo: two	sinistrālē: left-hand; singular common accusative from <i>sinistra</i> , <i>sinistræ</i>
eam: her; singular feminine accusative from <i>is</i> , <i>ea</i> , <i>id</i>	stagnū: swamp, pool; singular neuter nominative from <i>stagnū</i> , <i>stagni</i>
ego: I; (pronoun)	suis: their; plural dative or ablative of <i>suus</i>
Embreis: Embreis Guletic, Ambrosius's name in Welsh	sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fūi</i> , <i>fūtūrūs</i>
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fūi</i> , <i>fūtūrūs</i>	suō: their; singular dative or ablative of <i>suus</i>
et: and	surget: he will lift; 3rd person singular future active from <i>surgō</i> , <i>surgere</i> , <i>surrēxī</i> , <i>surrēctus</i>
figūra: figure, symbol; singular feminine nominative from <i>figūra</i> , <i>figūræ</i>	tamen: however
gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from <i>gēns</i> , <i>gentis</i>	tenēbūt: they will hold; 3rd person plural future active from <i>teneō</i> , <i>tenērē</i> , <i>tenuī</i> , <i>tentus</i>
gentēm: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from <i>gēns</i> , <i>gentis</i>	tentōriū: tent; singular neuter nominative or accusative from <i>tentorium</i> , <i>tentoriū</i>
gentēs: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine accusative from <i>gēns</i> , <i>gentis</i>	trāns: across, beyond; (preposition)
gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive from <i>gēns</i> , <i>gentis</i>	tu: you; (pronoun)
Guletic: Embreis Guletic, Ambrosius's name in Welsh	tuī: your; (pronoun)
Guorthigirn: Cair Guorthigirn, the name of a city that Vortigern built	tūtām: safe; singular feminine accusative from <i>tūtūs</i> , <i>tūta</i> -um, <i>tūtior</i> -or -us, <i>tūtissimus</i> -a -um
Guunnessī: a region of England	tuūs: your; singular masculine nominative from <i>tuūs</i> , <i>tua</i> , <i>tuūm</i>
hīc: here	ūnūs: one
huius: of this; singular genitive of <i>hic</i> , <i>haec</i> , <i>hoc</i>	urbēm: city; singular feminine accusative from <i>urbs</i> , <i>urbis</i>
ibi: there, then	ūsque: until, all the way, up until
id: it	ut: so that
ille: that; singular masculine nominative from <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i>	vādē: go!; 2nd person singular present active imperative from <i>vādō</i> , <i>vādere</i> , <i>vāsī</i> , -
illi: to that one; singular dative from <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i>	vermēs: worms; plural masculine nominative from <i>vermis</i> , <i>vermis</i>
illius: of that; singular genitive from <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i>	vermis: worm; singular masculine nominative from <i>vermis</i> , <i>vermis</i>
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	vidēbātūr: it was appearing; 3rd person singular imperfect passive from <i>videō</i> , <i>vidērē</i> , <i>vidī</i> , <i>visus</i>
inveniās: you discover; 2nd person singular present active subjunctive from <i>invenio</i> , <i>invenire</i> , <i>inveni</i> , <i>inventus</i>	viriliter: strongly
ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from <i>ipse</i> , <i>ipsa</i> , <i>ipsum</i>	vocāris: will you be called; 2nd person singular future passive from <i>vocō</i> , <i>vocārē</i> , <i>vocāvī</i> , <i>vocātūs</i>
istā: that; singular feminine ablative from <i>iste</i> , <i>ista</i> , <i>istud</i>	vocātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from <i>vocō</i> , <i>vocārē</i> , <i>vocāvī</i> , <i>vocātūs</i>
magis: rather, more	vocor: I am called; 1st person singular present passive from <i>vocō</i> , <i>vocārē</i> , <i>vocāvī</i> , <i>vocātūs</i>
manēbō: I will remain; 1st person singular future active from <i>maneō</i> , <i>manērē</i> , <i>mānsī</i> , <i>mānsus</i>	
mare: sea; singular neuter nominative from <i>mare</i> , <i>maris</i>	
marī: sea; singular neuter ablative from <i>mare</i> , <i>maris</i>	
meus: my; singular masculine nominative from <i>meus</i> , <i>mea</i> , <i>meum</i>	
multās: many; plural feminine accusative from <i>multus</i> , <i>multa</i> -um, <i>plūrīmus</i> -a -um	
mundī: world; singular masculine genitive from <i>mundus</i> , <i>mundi</i>	
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from <i>nōmen</i> , <i>nōminis</i>	
nōn: not	
nostra: our; singular feminine nominative from <i>nōster</i> , <i>nostra</i> , <i>nostrum</i>	
occidentālis: western; singular common nominative from <i>occidentālis</i> , <i>occidentālis</i> , <i>occidentālē</i>	

43 Intereā Guorthemir filius Guorthigirn cum Hengistō et Horsō et cum gente illōrum petulanter pugnābant et eōs usque ad supradictam īsulam, quae vocātur Tanet, expulit et eōs ibī tribus vicibus conclūsit¹ obsēdit percussit comminuit terruit. Et ipsī lēgātōs ultrā mare usque in Germāniam trānsmittēbant vocandō ciūlās cum ingentī numerō bellātōrum virōrum. Et posteā pugnābant contrā rēgēs nostrae gentis: aliquandō vincēbantur et expellēbantur.

¹And there three times he confined, besieged, struck, crushed, and terrified them.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliquandō: finally, sometimes
 bellātōrum: of fighters; plural masculine genitive from bellātor,
 bellātōris
 ciulās: longships; plural feminine accusative variant spelling
 from ceola, ceolae
 comminuit: he crushed; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 commīnū, commīnūre, commīnū, commīnūtūs
 conclūs: he confined; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 conclūdō, conclūdēre, conclūsī, conclūsūs
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 cum: with
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 et: and
 expellēbantur: they were driven out; 3rd person plural
 imperfect passive from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus
 expulit: he drove out, expelled; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 gente: people, clan, nation; singular feminine ablative from
 gēns, gentis
 gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive
 from gēns, gentis
 Germaniam: Germany; singular feminine accusative from
 Germānia, Germāniae
 Guorthemir: Vortimer, son of Vortigern
 Guorthigirn: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern)
 Hengistō: with Hengist, the Saxon warrior (ablative case)
 Horsō: with Horsa, the Saxon warrior (ablative case)
 ibi: there, then
 illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille,
 illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ingenti: huge, enormous; singular ablative from ingēns, ingentis
 (gen.), ingentior -or -us, ingentissimus -a -um
 īsulam: island; singular feminine accusative from īsula,
 īsulae
 intereā: during
 ipsī: they themselves; plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 lēgātōs: legates, ambassadors; plural masculine accusative from
 lēgātūs, lēgātī
 mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris
 nostraē: our; singular feminine genitive of noster
 numerō: number; singular masculine ablative from numerus,
 numeri
 obsēdit: he besieged; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 obsidēō, obsidēre, obsēdi, obsessus
 percussit: he struck; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 percutiō, percutere, percussī, percussus
 petulanter: impudently, adverb from petulāns
 posteā: thereafter, later
 pugnābant: they were fighting; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātūs
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from
 rēx, rēgis
 supradictam: the above-said; past passive participle from
 suprādīcō, suprādicere, suprādīxi, suprādictus
 Tanet: the island of Thanet, which laid off the southeast coast of
 England. It is now a peninsula, not an island.
 terruit: he frightened; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus
 trānsmittēbant: they sent across; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from trānsmittō, trānsmittere, trānsmīsī, trānsmissus
 tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um,
 terni -ae -a, ter
 ultrā: beyond, further
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vicibus: times; plural feminine from vicis, vicis
 vincēbantur: they were conquered; 3rd person plural imperfect
 passive from vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus
 virōrum: of the men; plural masculine nominative from vir, virī
 vocandō: for calling; singular masculine ablative gerund from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātūs
 vocātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātūs

44 Et Guorthemir contrā illōs quattuor bella avidē gessit. Prīnum bellum super flūmen Derguentid; secundum bellum super vadum, quod dīcitur in linguā eōrum Episford, in nostrā autem linguā Rithergabail, et ibī cecidit Hors cum filiō Guorthigirnī, cuius nōmen erat Categirn. Tertium bellum in campō iuxtā lapidem¹ titulī, quī est super rīpam Gallicī maris, commīsit et barbarī vīctī sunt et ille victor fuit et ipsī in fugam versī usque ad ciūlās suās mersī² sunt in eās muliebriter intrantēs. Ille autem post modicum intervāllum mortuus est et ante mortem suam ad familiam suam dīxit, ut sepulchrum illīus in portū pōnerent, ā quō exierant, super rīpam maris, in quō vōbīs commendō: quamvīs³ in aliā parte portum Brittanniae teneant et habitāverint, tamen in istā terrā in aeternum nōn manēbunt. Illī autem mandātum eius contempsērunt et eum in locō, in quō imperāverat illīs, nōn sepeliērunt.

¹Next to the inscribed stone. The battle took place next to some sort of stone monument.

²They themselves turned in flight until their boats, and, entering womanly, hid in them. mersī sunt almost certainly means 'they hid' in this context. Nennius Interpretātus glosses this as *Saxonēs in fugam versī sunt usque ad suās ciūlās muliebriter*.

³Although they (the Saxons) in another part of Britain might hold a port and have lived in it, yet in this land they will not ever dwell. Vortimer may be invoking some sort of magic where his buried body would prevent the Saxons from conquering the place where it was buried.

ā: from, out of, by, since	mandātum: mandate; singular masculine accusative from mandātum, mandātī
ad: to, towards, at, according to	manēbunt: they will remain; 3rd person plural future active from maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
aeternum: eternal; singular neuter nominative from aeternus, aeterna -um, aeternior -or -us, aeternissimus -a -um	maris: sea; singular neuter genitive from mare, maris
aliā: other; singular feminine ablative from alius, alia, aliud	mersi: mersi sunt = they hid; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from mergō, mergere, mersi, mersus
ante: before, in front, forwards	modicum: a little; singular neuter accusative from modicum, modica
autem: but, however, moreover	mortem: death; singular feminine accusative from mors, mortis
avidē: eagerly, ardently; adverb from avidus, avida -um, avidior -or -us, avidissimus -a -um	mortuus: mortuus est = he died;
barbarī: barbarian; plural masculine nominative from barbarus, barbara -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -a -um	muliebriter: cowardly, womanly (adverb from muliebris, muliebre)
bella: battles, wars; plural neuter accusative from bellum, bellī	nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative from bellum, bellī	nōn: not
Britanniae: Britain (nominative plural or genitive singular case)	nostrā: our; singular feminine ablative from noster, nostra, nostrum
campō: field; singular masculine ablative from campus, campī	parte: part; singular feminine ablative from pars, partis
Categirn: a son of Vortigern	pōnerē: they might place; 3rd person plural imperfect subjective from pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus
cedidit: he fell; 3rd person singular perfect active from cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsus	portū: harbor, port; singular masculine ablative from portus, portūs
ciulās: longships; plural feminine accusative variant spelling from ceola, ceolae	portum: harbor, port; singular masculine accusative from portus, portūs
commendo: I entrust, commit, recommend; 1st person singular present active from commendō, commendare, commendāvī, commendātus	post: behind, after, since
commisit: he carried on (a fight); 3rd person singular perfect active from committō, committere, commisi, commissus	prīnum: first; singular neuter nominative from prīmus, prīma, prīnum
contempserunt: they contemned, they held in contempt; 3rd person plural perfect active from contemnō, contemnere, contempsi, contemptus	quāmvis: although
contrā: against, away from, facing	quātuor: 4
cuius: whose; singular genitive from quis	quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
cum: with	quō: what; singular ablative of quis
Derguentid: the name of a river	quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
dicitur: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus	rīpam: bank, shore; singular feminine accusative from rīpa, rīpae
dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus	Rithergabail: the name of a river ford
eās: their; plural feminine accusative from is, ea, id	secundum: second
eiūs: his/her/its	sepelivērunt: they buried; 3rd person plural perfect active from sepeliō, sepelire, sepelivi, sepultus
eōrum: their; plural masc. or neuter. genitive	sepulchrum: grave; singular neuter accusative from sepulchrum, sepulchri
Episford: the name of a river ford	suām: her; singular feminine acc. from suus
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	suās: their; plural accusative feminine of suus
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	super: above, on top of
et: and	tamen: however
eum: him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id	teneant: they (might) hold; 3rd person plural present active subjunctive from teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus
exierant: they had set forth; 3rd person plural pluperfect active from exēō, exire, exiū, exitus	terrā: land; singular feminine ablative from terra, terrae
familiam: family; singular feminine accusative from familia, familiae	tertium: third; singular neuter nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
filiō: son; singular masculine ablative from filius, filī	tituli: inscription, token; singular masculine genitive from titulus, tituli
flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from flūmen, flūminis	ūsque: until, all the way, up until
fugam: flight, escape; singular feminine accusative from fuga, fugae	ut: so that
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	vadūm: shallows; singular neuter accusative from vadum, vadī
Gallicī: Gallic; singular masculine genitive from Gallicus, Gallica, Gallicum	versī: having been turned; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from vertō, vertere, vertī, versus
gessit: he waged, carried; 3rd person singular perfect active from gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus	victī: victi sunt = they were conquered; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from
Guorthemir: Vortimer, son of Vortigern	victor: victor; singular masculine nominative from victor, victōris
Guorthigirnī: of Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (genitive case)	vōbīs: you; plural dative or ablative from tu
habitāverint: they had inhabited; 3rd person plural perfect active subjunctive from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus	
Hors: Horsa, a Saxon warrior	
ibi: there, then	
ille: he, that one; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud	
illi: they, those; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud	
illīs: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud	
illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud	
illōs: those; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud	
imperāverat: he had commanded; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
intervallūm: interval (of time); singular neuter accusative from intervallūm, intervallī	
intrantēs: entering; plural common nominative present participle from intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus	
ipsī: itself; sing. dative or plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum	
istā: that; singular feminine ablative from iste, ista, istud	
iuxtā: near, nearly	
lapidem: stone; singular masculine accusative from lapis, lapidis	
linguā: tongue, language; singular feminine ablative from lingua, linguae	
locō: place; singular masculine ablative from locus, locī	

45 At barbarī reversī sunt magnō opere, cum Guorthigirnis amīcus¹ illīs erat propter uxōrem suam et nūllus illōs abigere audācter valuit, quia nōn dē virtūte suā Britanniam occupāvērunt, sed dē nūtū Deī. Contrā voluntātem Deī quis resistere poterit et nitātus? Sed quōmodo² voluit Dominus fēcit et ipse omnēs gentēs regit et gubernat.

Factum est autem post mortem Guorthemir rēgis Guorthigirnī filiī et post reversiōnem Hengistī cum suīs turbīs cōnsilium fallāx³ hortātī sunt, ut dolum Guorthigirnī cum exercitū suō facerent. At illī lēgātōs, ut impetrārent pācem, mīsērunt, ut perpetua amīcitia inter illōs fieret. At ille Guorthegeirnus cum suīs maiōribus nātū⁴ cōnsilium fēcērunt et scrūtātī sunt, quid facerent; tandem ūnum cōnsilium cum omnibus fuit, ut pācem facerent, et lēgātī eōrum reversī sunt et posteā conventum addūxērunt, ut ex utrāque parte Brittonēs et Saxonēs in ūnum sine armīs convenīrent, ut firma amīcitia esset.

¹And the barbarians returned with great forces, and Vortigern was a friend to them because of his wife and no one was strong to audaciously drive them away, because not by their strength did they occupy Britain, but by the will of God. Recall that Vortigern's wife was Hengist's daughter; see section 37.

²But, however He wanted, the Lord (God) did, and He Himself reigns and governs all the peoples.

³They encouraged a false counsel, that they might make a trick of Vortigern with his army.

⁴With his elders by birth.

abigere: to drive away; present infinitive from *abigō*, abigere, *abēgi*, abactus
 addūxērunt: they lead, persuaded; 3rd person plural perfect active from *addūco*, addūcere, addūxi, adductus
 amīctia: friendship; singular feminine nominative from *amīctia*, *amīctiae*
 amīcus: friend; singular masculine nominative from *amicus*, *amica* -um, *amicior* -or -us, *amicissimus* -a -um
 armī: weapons; plural neuter ablative from *armum*, *armī*
 at: and
 audācter: audaciously
 autem: but, however, moreover
 barbarī: barbarian; plural masculine nominative from *barbarus*, *barbara* -um, *barbarior* -or -us, *barbarissimus* -a -um
 Brittāniā: Britain (accusative case)
 Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from *Brittō*, *Brittōnis*
 cōnsilium: plan, advice, council; singular neuter accusative from *consilium*, *consili(i)*
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 conveniērunt: they (might) have met together; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from *conveniō*, *convenire*, *convēni*, *conventus*
 conventū: meeting, agreement; singular feminine accusative from *conventus*, *conventū*
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 Dei: of God; singular masculine genitive from *Deus*, *Dei*
 dolum: trickery, deception; singular masculine accusative from *dolus*, *doli*
 Dominus: Lord; singular masculine nominative from *Dominus*, *Domini*
 eōrum: their; plural masc. or neuter. genitive
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*
 esset: he (might) have been; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*
 et: and
 ex: out of, from
 exercitū: army; singular neuter ablative from *exerceō*, *exercēre*, *exercui*, *exercitus*
 facerent: they did; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from *faciō*, *facere*, *fēci*, *factus*
 factum: factum est = it happened; from *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*
 fallāx: deceitful, misleading; singular nominative from *fallāx*, *fallācis* (gen.), *fallācior* -or -us, *fallācissimus* -a -um
 fēcērunt: they did; they made; 3rd person plural perfect active from *faciō*, *facere*, *fēci*, *factus*
 fēcīt: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from *faciō*, *facere*, *fēci*, *factus*
 fieret: it happened; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*
 filiū: son; singular masculine genitive from *filius*, *fili*
 firma: firm; singular feminine nominative from *firmus*, *firma* -um, *firmior* -or -us, *firmissimus* -a -um
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*
 gentēs: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine nominative from *gēns*, *gentis*
 gubernat: he steers, directs, guides; 3rd person singular present active from *gubernō*, *gubernāre*, *gubernāvī*, *gubernātus*
 Guortheigirnus: Vortigern
 Guorhemir: Vortimer, son of Vortigern
 Guorthigirni: of Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (genitive case)
 Guorthigirnis: Vortigern
 Hengisti: of Hengist, a Saxon warrior
 hortātī: hortātī sunt = they encouraged; plural masculine nominative perfect participle from *hortor*, *hortārī*, *hortātus*
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 illī: that; singular dative or plural masculine nominative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 illīs: those; plural dative or ablative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 impetrārēt: they obtained; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from *impetrō*, *impetrāre*, *impetrāvī*, *impetrātus*
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inter: between, among, during
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*
 lēgātī: legates, ambassadors; plural masculine nominative from *lēgātus*, *lēgātī*
 lēgātōs: legates, ambassadors; plural masculine accusative from *lēgātus*, *lēgātī*
 māgnō: large; singular masculine ablative from *māgnus*, *māgna* -um, *major* -or -us, *maximus* -a -um
 maiōribus: bigger; plural ablative from *māgnus*, *māgna* -um, *major* -or -us, *maximus* -a -um
 mīsērunt: they sent; 3rd person plural perfect active from *mittō*, *mittere*, *mīsī*, *missus*
 mortē: death; singular feminine accusative from *mors*, *mortis*
 nātū: birth; singular neuter ablative from *nāscor*, *nāscī*, *nātūs*
 sum
 nātūs: command; variant spelling from *nātūs*, *nātūs*
 nō: not
 nūllus: no, none, not any; singular masculine nominative from *nūllus*, *nūlla*, *nūllum* (gen -ius)
 nātū: command, will, pleasure; singular masculine ablative from *nātūs*, *nātūs*
 occupāvērunt: they seized, overtook, attacked; 3rd person plural perfect active from *occupo*, *occupare*, *occupavī*, *occupatūs*
 omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from *omnis*, *omnis*, *omne*
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from *omnis*, *omnis*, *omne*
 opere: extent; singular neuter ablative from *opus*, *operis*
 pācem: peace; singular feminine accusative from *pāx*, *pācis*
 parte: part; singular feminine ablative from *pars*, *partis*
 perpetua: perpetual; singular feminine nominative from *perpetuus*, *perpetua*, *perpetuum*
 post: behind, after, since
 posteā: thereafter, later
 poterit: he will be able to; 3rd person singular future active from *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*, -
 propter: because of, near
 quia: because
 quid: who; singular neuter nom. or acc. of *quis*
 quis: who
 quōmodo: how, by which means
 rēgīs: of the king; singular masculine genitive from *rēx*, *rēgis*
 regit: he rules; 3rd person singular present active from *regō*, *regere*, *rēxi*, *rēctus*
 resistērēt: to resist; present infinitive from *resistō*, *resistere*, *restitū*, -
 reversī: reversī sunt = they returned; plural masculine nominative perfect participle from *revertor*, *revertī*, *reversus*
 reversiōnēm: turning back, return; singular feminine accusative from *reversiō*, *reversiōnis*
 Saxonēs: The Saxons
 scrūtātī: scrūtātī sunt = they searched thoroughly; past passive participle from *scrūtor*, *scrūtārī*, *scrūtātus*
 sed: but
 sine: without
 suā: her/its; singular feminine ablative from *suus*
 suām: her; singular feminine acc. from *suus*
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of *suus*
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative of *suus*
 tandem: finally
 turbīs: troops; plural feminine ablative from *turba*, *turbae*
 ūnum: one; singular neuter nominative from *ūnus* -a -um, *primus* -a -um, *singulī* -ae -a, *semel*
 ut: so that
 utrā: either; singular feminine ablative from *uter*, *utra*, *utrum*
 utrāquē: either: singular feminine ablative from *uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque*
 uxōrem: wife; singular feminine accusative from *uxor*, *uxōris*
 valuit: he was healthy, able, strong; 3rd person singular perfect active from *valeo*, *valere*, *valui*, *valitus*
 virtūtē: virtue, manliness, power; singular feminine ablative from *virtūs*, *virtūtis*
 voluit: he wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active from *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*, -
 voluntātēm: will; singular feminine accusative from *voluntās*, *voluntātis*

46 Et Hengistus omnī familiae suae iussit, ut ūnusquisque artavum suum sub pede in mediō ficōnis suī pōneret: 'Et quandō clāmāverō ad vōs et dīxerō: "eu Saxonēs eniminit¹ saxās", cultellōs vestrōs ex ficōnibus vestrīs ēdūcīte et in illōs irruīte et fortiter contrā illōs resistīte. Et rēgem illōrum nōlīte occīdere, sed eum, prō causā filiae meae, quam dedī illī in coniugium, tenente, quia melius² est nōbīs, ut ex manibus nostrīs redimātur.' Et conventum addūxērunt et in ūnum convēnērunt, et Saxonēs amīcāliter³ locūtī in mente interim vulpicīnō mōre agēbānt et vir iuxtā virum sociāliter sēdērunt. Hengistus sīcut⁴ dīxerat, vōciferātus est et omnēs seniōrēs trecentī Guorthigirnī rēgis iugulātī sunt et ipse sōlus captus et catēnātus est et regiōnēs plūrimās prō redēmptiōne animae suae illīs tribuit, id est Estsaxum, Sutsaxum.

¹*Hey, Saxons, get your knives.* *eniminit* is not a Latin word and appears to be a transliteration of the Anglo-Saxon phrase *Nemet oure saxas*, which means *get your knives*.

²*Because it is better for us, that he might be redeemed out of our hands.* They held Vortigern hostage.

³*The Saxons spoke amicably (in a friendly manner) meanwhile they acted according to a foxy (sly) custom in their mind, and man sat next to man sociably.*

⁴*Just as Hengist had said, he yelled and all 300 elders of King Vortigern were slain and he himself (Vortigern) was captured and chained and he assigned to them more regions, that is Essex and Sussex, for the redemption of his soul.*

ad: to, towards, at, according to	omne
addūxérunt: they lead to; 3rd person plural perfect active from addūcō, addūcere, addūxi, adductus	omnī: all, every; singular dative from omnis, omnis, omne
agēbant: they conducted; 3rd person plural imperfect active from agō, agere, ēgī, āctus	pedē: foot; singular masculine ablative from pēs, pedis
amicus, amici: friend; singular masculine nominative from amīcus, amīci	plūrīmās: very many; plural feminine accusative from multus, multa -um, -̄, plūrīmus -a -um
artavum: small knife; quill-sharpening knife; singular masculine accusative from artavus, artavī	pōneret: he put; 3rd person singular imperfect subjunctive from pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus
captus: captus est = was seized; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from capiō, capere, cēpī, captus	prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
catēnātus: catēnātus est = was chained; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from catēnō, catēnāre, catēnāvī catēnātus	quam: whom; singular feminine accusative from quī
causā: cause, reason; singular feminine ablative from causa, causae	quādō: when, because
clāmāvērō: I will have shouted; 1st person singular future-perfect active from clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī, clāmātūs	redēmptiōne: redemption; singular feminine ablative from redēmptiō, redēmptiōnis
coniugium: marriage; singular neuter accusative from coniugium, coniugī	redimātūr: is being bought back; 3rd person singular present passive subjunctive from redimō, redimere, redēmī, redēmptus
contrā: against, away from, facing	rēgēm: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
convénērunt: they came together; 3rd person plural perfect active from conveniō, convenire, convēnī, conventus	rēgōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
conventum: meeting; singular feminine accusative from conventus, conventūs	rēgīs: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
cultellōs: small knives; plural masculine accusative from cultellus, cultellī	resistētūr: fight!; 2nd person plural present active imperative from resistō, resistere, restitū, -
dedi: I gave; 1st person singular perfect active from dō, dare, dēdi, datus	saxas: knives; see footnote 1
dīxerat: he had said; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from dīcō, dicere, dīxi, dictus	Saxōnēs: The Saxons
dīxerō: I will have said; 1st person singular future-perfect active from dīcō, dicere, dīxi, dictus	sed: but
ēdūcīte: take out!; 2nd person plural present active imperative from educo, educere, eduxi, eductus	sēdērunt: they sat; 3rd person plural perfect active from sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessus
ēn: behold!	seniōrēs: elders; plural common accusative from senex, senis (gen.), senior -or -us, -
ēnim: for, truly, really, indeed	sīcūt: as, same as, like
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	sociālīter: socially; adverb from sociālis, sociāle
Estsaxum: Essex	sōlūs: alone; singular masculine nominative from sōlus, sōla, sōlūm (gen -ius)
et: and	suāe: his; singular feminine dative
eu: hey! (interjection)	sub: below, under
eum: him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id	suī: of him; singular or plural genitive of se
ex: out of, from	Sutsaxum: Sussex
familiae: family; singular feminine active from familia, familiae	suūm: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
fīcōnībus: shoes; this word wasn't in any dictionary I consulted; by context it must mean shoes.	tenētē: holding; singular ablative present participle from teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus
fīcōnīs: shoe; this word wasn't in any dictionary I consulted; by context it must mean shoe. <i>Nennius Interpretātūs</i> glosses this passage as <i>Sed Saxōnēs habēbant secum cultrōs inter plantās et soleās</i> .	trecentī: three hundred; plural masculine nominative from trecentī -ae -a, trecentesimus -a -um, trecentī -ae -a, trecentie (n)s
fīliae: daughter; singular feminine genitive from filia, filiae	tribuit: he assigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from tribuō, tribuere, tribūi, tribūtūs
fortiter: strongly (adverb from fortis, forte)	ūnum: one; singular neuter nominative from ūnus -a -um, primus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
Guorthigirnī: of Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (genitive case)	ūnusquisque: each one
Hengistus: Hengist, a Saxon warrior	ut: so that
id: it	vestrīs: your; plural dative or ablative from vester
illī: to that one; singular dative from ille, illa, illud	vestrōs: your; plural masculine accusative from vester
illīs: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud	vir: man; singular masculine nominative from vir, virī
illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud	virūm: man; singular masculine accusative from vir, virī
illōs: those; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud	vōcīferātūs: vōcīferātūs est = he yelled; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from vōcīferor, vōcīferārī, vōcīferātūs
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	vōs: you; (pronoun)
interim: during	vulpīcīmō: foxy; word derived from vulpis, vulpis
ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum	
irruīte: rush! force your way in!; 2nd person plural present active imperative from irruō, irruere, irruī, irruītus	
iugulātī: iugulātī sunt = were slaughtered; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from iugulō, iugulāre, iugulāvī, iugulātus	
iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus	
iuxtā: near, nearly	
locūtī: having been spoken; plural masculine nominative perfect participle from loquor, loquī, locūtus sum	
manībus: hands; plural feminine ablative from manus, manūs	
meae: my; singular feminine genitive from meus, mea, meum	
mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from mediūs, media, medium	
melius: better, comparative adverb from bonus	
mente: mind; singular feminine ablative from mēns, mentis	
mōre: manner, custom; singular masculine ablative from mōs, mōris	
nōbīs: us; singular dative or ablative from ego	
nōlīte: be unwilling! imperative plural of nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi (irr.)	
nostrīs: our	
occīdere: to kill; present infinitive from occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsūs	
omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis,	

47 Sānctus vērō Germānus Guorthigirnō praedicābat, ut ad Dominum suum converteret et ab illicitā coniūnctiōne¹ sē sēparāret; et ille usque ad regiōnem, quae ā nōmine suō accēpit nōmen Guorthigirniaun, miserābiliter effūgit, ut ibī cum uxōribus suīs latēret. Et sānctus Germānus post illum secūtus est cum omnī clērō Brittōnum et ibī quadrāgintā diēbus et quadrāgintā noctibus mānsit et super petram ūrābat et diē noctūque stābat. Et iterum Guorthigirnus usque ad arcem Guorthigirnī, quae est in regiōne Demetōrum iuxtā flūmen Teibī, ignōminiōsē abscessit. Et solitō mōre sānctus Germānus eum secūtus est et ibī ieiūnus cum omnī clērō tribus diēbus totidemque noctibus causāliter mānsit et in quārtā nocte arx tōta mediae² circā noctīs hōram per ignem missum dē caelō ex imprōvisō cecidit ārdente igne caelestī; et Guorthigirnus cum omnibus, quī cum eō erant, et cum uxōribus suīs dēfēcit. Hic est fīnis Guorthigirnī, ut in librō beātī Germānī rep̄peri. Alii³ autem aliter dīxērunt.

¹*That he might turn to his Lord (i.e. become a Christian) and from his illicit marriage separate himself.* This refers to his marriage to his daughter, see section 39.

²*On the fourth night the whole castle, around the hour of the middle of the night, through fire sent from heaven, out of the unexpected, fell, burning by the celestial fire.* See section 34 for another account of Saint Germanus praying and fire falling from heaven.

³*Other (books containing narratives about Vortigern) however said otherwise.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 abscessit: he fled, left; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 abscēdō, abscēdere, abscessī, abcessus
 accēpit: it received; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 acciō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliū: others; plural masculine nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 aliter: otherwise
 ārdente: burning; singular ablative present participle from
 ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsi, ārsus
 arcem: castle, citadel; singular feminine accusative from arx, arcis
 arx: castle, citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx, arcis
 autem: but, however, moreover
 bēātī: blessed; singular masculine genitive from bēātus, bēāta
 -um, bēātior -or -us, bēātissimus -a -um
 Brittonūm: of the Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural
 masculine genitive from Brittō, Brittōnis
 caelestī: heavenly matters; singular ablative from caelestis,
 caeleste, caelestior -or -us, caelestissimus -a -um
 caelō: heaven, sky; singular masculine ablative from caelus,
 caeli
 cāusāliter: by way of cause, causally
 cecidit: he fell; 3rd person singular perfect active from cadō,
 cadere, cecidi, cāsus
 circā: around, about, concerning
 clērō: clergy; singular masculine ablative from clērus, clēri
 coniunctionē: conjunction, association; singular feminine
 ablative from conjunctio, conjunctionis
 converteret: he turned, changed; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active subjunctive from convertō, convertere, convertī,
 conversus
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dēfēcīt: he died; 3rd person singular perfect from dēficiō,
 dēficerē, dēfēcī, dēfēctus
 Demetōrum: of the Demetae; this is modern-day Dyfed in Wales
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēi
 diēbus: days; plural common ablative from diēs, diēi
 dīxērunt: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from dīcō,
 dicere, dīxi, dīctus
 Dominūm: lord; singular masculine accusative from dominus,
 domini
 effūgit: he fled; 3rd person singular present active from effugio,
 effugere, effugi, effugitus
 eō: with him; 3rd person singular ablative from is, ea, id
 erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 ex: out of, from
 finis: end; singular common nominative from finis, finis
 flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from flūmen, flūminis
 Germāni: of Saint Germanus
 Germanus: Saint Germanus
 Guorthigirnī: of Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (genitive case)
 Guorthigirniaum: a region named after Vortigern
 Guorthigirno: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (dative or ablative case)
 Guorthigirnus: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (nominative case)
 hic: this; singular masculine nominative of hic, haec, hoc
 hōram: hour, time; singular feminine accusative from hōra,
 hōrae
 ibī: there, then
 iēiūnus: fasting; singular masculine nominative from iēiūnus,
 iēiūna -um, iēiūnior -or -us, iēiūnissimus -a -um
 īgne: fire; singular masculine ablative from īgnis, īgnis
 ignem: fire; singular masculine accusative from īgnis, īgnis
 ignōmīniōsē: disgracefully; adverb from ignōmīniōsus,
 ignōmīniōsa, ignōmīniōsum
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illicitā: unallowed; singular feminine ablative from illicitus,
 illicita, illicitum
 illum: that; singular feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 imprōvisō: unexpected; singular masculine ablative from
 imprōvisus, imprōvisa, imprōvisum
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 iterum: again
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 latēret: he lay hidden, lurked; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active subjunctive from lateō, latēre, latūi, -
 librō: book; singular masculine ablative from liber, librī
 mānsit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 maneo, manēre, mansi, mānsus
 mediae: middle; singular feminine genitive from medius, media,
 medium
 miserābiliter: miserably; adverb from misereō, miserēre,
 miserābilis

48 Postquam exōsī¹ fuērunt illī omnēs hominēs gentis suaē prō piāculō suō inter potentēs et impotentēs, inter servum et liberum, inter monachōs et lāicōs, inter parvum et magnum, et ipse dum dē locō ad locum vagus errat, tandem cor eius crepuit et dēfūctus est, nōn cum laude. Aliī dīxērunt: terra aperta est et dēglūtīvit eum in nocte, in quā combuēta est arx circā eum, quia nōn inventae sunt ūllae reliquiae illōrum, quī combustī sunt cum eō in arce.

¹*Afterwards all the people of his race, from the powerful to the weak, from the slave to the free, from the monks to the laity, from the small to the large, had hated him because of his sin.* I've chosen to interpret *exōsī fuērunt* as a past passive participle construction of a deponent verb, with *illī* being in the dative because verbs related to sentiment often use the dative in place of the accusative. The alternative interpretation would be to take *illī* as plural nominative and *exōsī* as an adjective, in which case the whole people would be hated on account of his sin. Because previously the author talks about Saint Germanus and a council of all the Britons condemning Vortigern, I favor the first view.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 alii: others; plural masculine nominative from *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*
 aperta: *aperta est* = was opened; singular feminine nominative
 perfect passive participle from *aperiō*, *aperīre*, *aperūi*,
 apertus
 arce: castle, citadel; singular feminine ablative from *arx*, *arcis*
 arx: castle, citadel; singular feminine nominative from *arx*, *arcis*
 circā: around, about, concerning
 combusta: *combusta est* = was burned up; from *combūrō*,
 ^{combūrere, combustī, combustus}
 combustī: *combustī sunt* = they were burned up; from *combūrō*,
 ^{combūrere, combustī, combustus}
 cor: heart; singular neuter nominative from *cor*, *cordis*
 crepuit: it cracked; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 ^{crepō, crepāre, crepūi, crepitus}
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dēfūctus: *dēfūctus est* = he died; singular masculine
 nominative perfect participle from *dēfungor*, *dēfungī*,
 dēfūctus
 dēglutīvit: it swallowed; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 ^{dēglutiō, dēglutire, dēglutīvi, dēglutītus}
 dīxērunt: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from *dīcō*,
 dīcere, *dīxi*, *dīctus*
 dum: while, as long as, until
 eius: his/her/its
 eō: I go; 1st person singular present active from *eo*, *ire*, *ivi(ii)*,
 itus
 errat: he wanders, errs; 3rd person singular present active from
 ^{errō, errāre, errāvi, errātus}
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present from *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*,
 futūrus
 et: and
 eum: him; singular masculine accusative from *is*, *ea*, *id*
 exōsī: *exōsī fuerunt* = they had hated; see footnote 1
 fuērunt: they were; 3rd person plural perfect active from *sum*,
 esse, *fuī*, *futūrus*
 gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive
 from *gēns*, *gentis*
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from *homō*,
 hominis
 illī: that; singular dative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*; see footnote 1
 illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from *ille*,
 illa, *illud*
 impotentēs: the weak, powerless; plural common accusative
 from *impotēns*, (gen.), *impotentis*
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inter: between, among, during
 inventae: *inventae sunt* = they were found; plural feminine
 nominative perfect passive participle from *inveniō*,
 invenīre, invēnī, inventus
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from *ipse*, *ipsa*,
 ipsum
 lāicōs: laity; plural masculine accusative from *lāicus* -a -um
 laude: praise; singular feminine ablative from *laus*, *laudis*
 liberum: free; singular masculine accusative from *liber*, *liberi*
 locō: place; singular masculine ablative from *locus*, *locī*
 locum: place; singular masculine accusative from *locus*, *locī*
 māgnū: large; singular neuter nominative from *māgnus*,
 māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 monachōs: monks; plural masculine accusative from *monachus*,
 monachi
 nocte: night; singular feminine ablative from *nox*, *noctis*
 nōn: not
 omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from *omnis*,
 omnis, omne
 parvum: small; singular neuter accusative from *parvus*, *parva*
 -um, minor -or -us, minimus -a -um
 piāculō: sin; singular neuter ablative from *piāculum*, *piāculī*
 postquam: since, since then, after
 potentēs: mighty; plural common accusative from *potēns*,
 potentis (gen.), *potentior* -or -us, *potentissimus* -a -um
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 quā: what; singular female ablative of *qui*
 qui: who; plural masculine nominative of *quis*
 quia: because
 reliquiae: remains; plural feminine nominative from *reliquia*,
 reliquiae
 servum: slave, servant; singular masculine accusative from
 servus, servi
 suae: her; singular feminine gen. or dat. or plural feminine
 nom. or voc. from *suus*
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative of *suus*
 tandem: finally
 terra: land; singular feminine nominative from *terra*, *terrae*
 ullae: any; plural feminine nominative from *ullus*, *ulla*, *ullum*
 (gen. -ius)
 vagus: vagrant; singular masculine nominative from *vagus*, *vagī*

Trēs filiōs habuit, quōrum nōmina sunt Guorthemir, quī pugnābat contrā barbarōs, ut
suprā dīximus; secundō Categirn; tertius Pāscent, quī rēgnāvit in duābus regiōnibus
Buelt et Guortheġirniaun post mortem patris suī largiente¹ Ambrosiō illī, quī fuit rēx
inter omnēs rēgēs Brittannicae gentis. Quārtus fuit Faustus, quī ā filiā suā genitus est
illī, et sānctus Germānus baptīzāvit illum et nūtrīvit et docuit et condidit locum
magnum super rīpam flūminis, quod vocātur Rēnis, et manet usque hodiē. Et ūnam
filiā habuit, quae fuit māter Faustī sānctī.

¹*Having been granted by Ambrosius to him.* This is an ablative absolute.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 Ambrosiō: Ambrosius (ablative case)
 baptizāvit: he baptized; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 baptizō, baptizāre, baptizāvi, baptizātus
 barbarōs: barbarians; plural masculine accusative from
 barbarus, barbara -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -a
 -um
 Brittannicae: of the Brittannic (genitive case)
 Buelt: Buellt, a region in Wales
 Categirn: Categirn, son of Vortigern
 condidit: he founded, he built; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from condō, condere, condidi, conditus
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 diximus: we said; 1st person plural perfect active from dīcō,
 dicere, dīxi, dictus
 docuit: he taught; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 doceō, docēre, docui, doctus
 duābus: two; plural feminine ablative from duo -ae o, secundus
 -a -um, bimī -ae -a, bis
 et: and
 Faustī: of Faustus
 Faustus: Faustus, a king who was grandfather of a saint.
 filiā: daughter; singular feminine ablative from filia, filiae
 filiām: daughter; singular feminine accusative from filia, filiae
 filiōs: sons; plural masculine accusative from filius, fili
 flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from flūmen, flūminis
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 genitus: genitus est = he was born; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from genō, genere,
 genuī, genitus
 gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive
 from gēns, gentis
 Germanus: Saint Germanus
 Guortheġirniaun: a region in Wales
 Guorthemir: Vortimer, son of Vortigern
 habuit: he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from habeō,
 habēre, habū, habitus
 hodiē: today
 illi: that; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 illum: that; singular feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inter: between, among, during
 largiente: having granted; ablative participle from largior,
 largirī, largitus
 locum: place; singular masculine accusative from locus, locī
 māgnūm: large; singular neuter nominative from māgnus,
 māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 manēt: he remains; 3rd person singular present active from
 maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 māter: mother; singular feminine nominative from māter, mātris
 mortem: death; singular feminine accusative from mors, mortis
 nōmina: names; plural neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
 nūtrīvit: he nourished; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 nūtriō, nūtrīre, nūtrītus
 omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis,
 omne
 Pāscent: Pāscent, a son of Vortigern
 patris: father; singular masculine genitive from pater, patris
 post: behind, after, since
 pugnābat: he was fighting; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quārtus: fourth
 qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 quōrum: of whom; plural masc or neut. genitive of quis
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
 regiōnibus: regions; plural feminine ablative from regiō,
 regiōnis
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 Rēnis: possibly the River Rhaeadr in Powys, Wales
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 ripam: bank, shore; singular feminine accusative from ripa,
 ripae
 sānctī: holy
 sānctus: holy, saint
 secundō: second
 sua: her/its; sing. fem. nom. or abl. or neuter nom. or acc. from
 suus
 suī: of him; singular or plural genitive of se
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 super: above, on top of
 supra: over, above, beyond, before
 tertius: third; singular masculine nominative from trēs -es -ia,
 tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius

-a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 ūnam: one; singular feminine accusative from ūnus -a -um,
 primus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 vocātū: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

49 Haec est geneālogia illīus, quae ad initium retrō recurrit.

Fernmail ipse est, quī regit modo in regiōnibus duābus Buelt et Guorthigirniaun, filius Teudubir. Teudubir ipse est rēx Bueltiae regiōnis, filius Pāscent, filiī Guoidcant, filiī Moriud, filiī Eldat, filiī Eldoc, filiī Paul, filiī Mepurit, filiī Briacat, filiī Pāscent, filiī Guorthigirn Guortheneu, filiī Guitaul, filiī Guitolin, filiī Glōvī. Bonus, Paul, Maurōn trēs frātrēs fuērunt filiī Glovī, quī aedificāvit urbem magnam super rīpam flūminis Sabrīnae, quae vocātur Brittannīcō sermōne Cair Glovī, Saxonice autem Gloecestēr. Satis dictum est dē Guorthigirnō et dē genere suō.

50 Sānctus Germānus reversus est post mortem illīus ad patriam suam.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aedificāvit: he built; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Bonus: a son of Glovus
 Briacat: an ancestor of Fernmail
 Brittanicō: Britannic (ablative case)
 Buelt: Buellt, region in Wales
 Bueltiae: of Buellt, a region in Wales
 Cair: city (a Welsh word)
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dictum: dictum est = has been said; perfect passive participle
 from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 duābus: two; plural feminine ablative from duo -ae o, secundus
 -a -um, bini -ae -a, bis
 Eldat: an ancestor of Fernmail
 Eldoc: an ancestor of Fernmail
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 Fernmail: king of two regions of Wales
 filiū: son; singular masculine genitive from filius, fili
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from flūmen, flūminis
 frātrēs: brothers; plural masculine nominative from frāter,
 frātris
 fuērunt: they were; 3rd person plural perfect active from sum,
 esse, fuī, futūrus
 geneālogiā: genealogy; singular feminine nominative from
 geneālogiā, geneālogiæ
 genere: offspring; singular neuter ablative from genus, generis
 Germanus: Saint Germanus
 Glocester: Gloucester, a city near Wales
 Glovi: an ancestor of Fernmail
 Guitaul: an ancestor of Fernmail
 Guitolin: an ancestor of Fernmail
 Guoidcant: an ancestor of Fernmail
 Guortheneu: Guorthigirn Guortheneu, an ancestor of Fernmail
 Guorthigirn: Guorthigirn Guortheneu, an ancestor of Fernmail
 Guorthigirniaun: a region in Wales
 Guorthigirno: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (dative or ablative case)
 haec: this; these; singular feminine nominative or plural neuter
 nom. or acc. of hic, haec, hoc
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 initium: beginning; singular neuter accusative from initium,
 initii
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 māgnam: large; singular feminine accusative from māgnus,
 māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 Mauron: a son of Glovus
 Mepurit: an ancestor of Fernmail
 modo: now, presently
 mortem: death; singular feminine accusative from mors, mortis
 Moriud: an ancestor of Fernmail
 Pāscent: an ancestor of Fernmail
 patriam: father; singular feminine accusative from patria,
 patriæ
 Paul: an ancestor of Fernmail, or a son of Glovus
 post: behind, after, since
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 recurrit: it returns; 3rd person singular perfect from recurrō,
 recurrere, recurrī, recursus
 regiōnibus: regions; plural feminine ablative from regiō,
 regiōnis
 regiōnis: region; singular feminine genitive from regiō, regiōnis
 regit: he rules; 3rd person singular present active from regō,
 regere, rexī, rēctus
 retrō: behind, backwards
 reversus: reversus + est = he returned
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 ripam: bank, shore; singular feminine accusative from rīpa,
 rīpae
 Sabrinae: the River Severn, the longest river in Britain.
 Sabrinae is probably in the nominative case here.
 Saxonice: in Anglo-Saxon
 sānctus: holy, saint
 satis: enough
 sermōne: conversation, speech; singular masculine ablative
 from sermō, sermōnis
 suam: her; singular feminine acc. from suus
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
 super: above, on top of
 trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius
 -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 Teudubir: an ancestor of Fernmail
 urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis

III. Vīta Patriciī

Sānctus Patricius erat in illō tempore captīvus apud Scottōs et dominus illīus nōminābātur Milchu et porcārius cum illō erat et in septimō decimō annō aetātis suaē reversus est dē captīvitāte et nūtū¹ deī ērudītus est posteā in sacrīs litterīs et ad Rōmam usque pervēnit et per longum spatiū mānsit ibīdem. Ad lēgandum² et ad scrūtanda mystēria deī et sāncṭārum scriptūrārum librōs percurrit. Nam cum ibī īisset per annōs septem, missus est Palladius epīscopus prīmitus ā Caelestīnō epīscopō et Pāpā Rōmae ad Scottōs in Chrīstum convertendōs; sed prohibuit illum Deus per quāsdam tempestātēs, quia nēmō³ potest accipere quicquam dē terrā, nisi dē caelō datum fuerit illī dēsuper. Et profectus est ille Palladius dē Hiberniā et pervēnit ad Brittanniam et ibī dēfūnctus est in terrā Pictōrum.

¹By the will of God was educated afterwards in sacred literature.

²For reading and for studying thoroughly the mysteries of God and of the Holy Scriptures he ran to the books.

³Because no one can receive anything from the earth, unless it has been given to him from heaven above. This is similar to John 3:27 in the Vulgate: *nōn potest homō accipere quicquam nisi fuerit eī datum dē caelō.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 accipere: to receive; present infinitive from accipiō, accipere,
 accēpī, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aetātis: of age; singular feminine genitive from aetās, aetātis
 anno: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, anni
 annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from annus, anni
 apud: at, by, near
 Brittanīam: Britain (accusative case)
 caelestinō: heavenly; singular masculine ablative from caeleste,
 caelestis
 caelō: heaven, sky; singular masculine ablative from caelus,
 caeli
 captivitātē: captivity; singular feminine ablative from captitvitas,
 captivitatis
 captivus: captive; singular masculine nominative from captivus,
 captiva, captivum
 Chrīstūm: Christ; singular masculine accusative from Chrīstus,
 Chrīstī
 convertendōs: for converting; plural masculine accusative
 gerund from convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus
 cum: with
 quāsdam: a certain; plural feminine accusative from quidam
 datum: datum fuerit = had been given; from dō, dare, dedi,
 datus
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 decimō: tenth
 dēfunctus: dēfunctus est = he died; from dēfungor, defungi,
 dēfunctus
 Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 dēsuper: above
 Deus: god; singular masculine nominative from Deus, Dei
 Dominus: lord, master; singular masculine nominative from
 dominus, domini
 episcopō: overseer, bishop; singular masculine ablative from
 episcopus, episcopi
 episcopus: overseer, bishop; singular masculine nominative
 from episcopus, episcopi
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fuī, futūrus
 ēruditus: ēruditus est = he was educated; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from ērudiō, ērudire,
 ērudīvī, ēruditus
 et: and
 Hiberniā: Ireland; singular feminine ablative from Hibernia,
 Hiberniae
 ibī: there, then
 ibidem: in the same place
 III: 3 as a Roman numeral
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illi: that; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 illo: these; singular masculine ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illum: that; singular feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 īset: he had gone; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
 subjunctive from eō, ire, ī, itus
 lēgandum: reading; gerund from lēgō, lēgāre, lēgāvī, lēgātus
 librōs: books; plural masculine accusative from liber, libri
 litteris: literature; plural feminine ablative from littera, litterae
 longum: long; singular neuter accusative from longus, longa
 -um, longior -or -us, longissimus -a -um
 mānsit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 Milchu: the man who owned Saint Patrick
 missus: missus est = he was sent; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from mittō, mittere,
 mīsī, missus
 mystēriā: mysteries; plural neuter accusative from mystērium,
 mystēriī
 nam: yes, truly
 nēmō: no one; singular common nominative from nēmō, nēminis
 nīsī: if not, unless
 nōminābātur: he was named, called; 3rd person singular
 imperfect passive from nōminō, nōmināre, nōmināvī,
 nōminātus
 nūtū: command, will, pleasure; singular masculine ablative from
 nūtus, nūtus
 Palladius: Palladius: a bishop sent to convert the Scots
 Pāpa: pope; singular masculine nominative from Papa, Papae
 Patrici: of Saint Patrick
 Patricius: Saint Patrick
 per: through
 percurrit: he ran through; 3rd person singular present active
 from percurro, percurre, percurre, percursus
 pervenit: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
 Pictōrum: of the Picts
 porcarius: swineherd; singular masculine nominative from

51 Audītā¹ morte Paladii epīscopī alius lēgātus Patricius Theodosiō et Valentiānō rēgnantibus ā Caelestīnō pāpa Rōmānō et angelō Deī, cui nōmen erat Victor, monente et suādente sānctō Germānō epīscopō ad Scottōs in fidem Chrīstī convertendōs mittitur. Mīsit Germānus seniōrem cum illō Segerum² ad quendam hominem mīrābilem summum epīscopum Amatheam rēgem in propinquō habitantem. Ibi sānctus sciēns omnia, quae ventūra essent illī, epīscopālem, gradum Amathēō rēge epīscopus sānctus accēpit et nōmen quod est Patricius sūmpsit, quia prius Maun vocābātur. Auxilius et Isērīnus et cēterī īferiōrī gradū simul īordinātī sunt cum eō.

¹*Having heard of the death of the bishop Paladius, another legate, Patrick, while Theodosius and Valentianus were reigning (over the Roman empire), was sent by Celestine the Roman Pope and by an angel of God, whose name was Victor, by the urging and persuading of the bishop Saint Germanus, to be sent for converting the Scots to Christ.*

²*(Saint) Germanus sent with him the elder Segerus to a certain marvelous man, the archbishop king Amatheas in the neighboring land. There, the holy man knowing everything, which was to come to him, the holy bishop received the rank (of bishop) from Amatheus and took up the name which is Patrick, because before he was called Maun. Segerus appears to be a companion of Patrick, but is not mentioned again.*

³*Auxilius and Isērīnus and others were ordained to lower ranks (in the church hierarchy) with him.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 accépit: he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 acciō, accipere, accépī, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 alius: other; singular masculine nominative from alius, alia,
 aliud
 angelō: angel, messenger; singular masculine ablative from
 angelus, angelī
 Amatēam: Amatheus, the archbishop and king who ordained
 Patrick
 Amathēō: Amatheus, the archbishop and king who ordained
 Patrick
 audītā: having been heard; singular feminine ablative perfect
 passive participle from audio, audire, audīvi, audītus
 Auxilius: a man who went with Saint Patrick
 Caelestīnō: Pope Celestine I (papacy 422-432)
 cēterī: others; plural masculine nominative from cēterus,
 cētera, cēterum
 Chrīstī: Christ; singular masculine genitive from Chrīstus,
 Chrīstī
 convertēndōs: converting; plural masculine accusative gerund
 from convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus
 cui: who; singular dative from quis
 cum: with
 quendam: a certain; singular masculine accusative from quidam
 Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 eō: with him; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
 episcopālēm: episcopal, of a bishop; singular common
 accusative from episcopālis, episcopālis, episcopāle
 episcopi: overseer, bishop; singular masculine genitive from
 episcopus, episcopī
 episcopō: overseer, bishop; singular masculine ablative from
 episcopus, episcopī
 episcopum: overseer, bishop; singular masculine accusative
 from episcopus, episcopī
 episcopus: overseer, bishop; singular masculine nominative
 from episcopus, episcopī
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fuī, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 fidem: faith; singular feminine accusative from fidēs, fideī
 Germanō: Saint Germanus (ablative case)
 Germanus: Saint Germanus
 gradū: rank, grade; singular masculine ablative from gradus,
 gradūs
 gradum: rank, grade; singular masculine accusative from
 gradus, gradūs
 habitantēm: living, inhabiting; singular common accusative
 present participle from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus
 hominem: person; singular masculine accusative from homō,
 hominis
 ibi: there, then
 illi: to that one; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 illō: that; singular masculine ablative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 īferiōrī: lower, inferior; singular masculine ablative from
 īferus -a -um
 Iserinus: a man who went with Saint Patrick
 lēgātus: legate, ambassador; singular masculine nominative
 from lēgātus, lēgātī
 Maun: previous name of Saint Patrick
 mīrābilem: marvelous, wonderful; singular common accusative
 from mīrābilis, mīrābilis, mīrābile
 mīsit: he sent; 3rd person singular perfect active from mittō,
 mittere, mīsī, missus
 mittitur: he is being sent; 3rd person singular present passive
 from mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus
 monente: urging; singular ablative present participle from
 moneō, monēre, monūi, monitus
 morte: death; singular feminine ablative from mors, mortis
 nōmen: name; singular neuter accusative from nōmen, nōminis
 omnia: all, every; plural neuter accusative from omnis, omnis,
 ome
 ūdinātī: ūdinātī sunt = they were ordained; plural masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from ūdinō, ūdināre,
 ūdināvī, ūdinātus
 Paladīi: of Palladius
 Pāpa: pope; singular masculine nominative from Papa, Papae
 Patricius: Saint Patrick
 prius: before
 propinquō: near, neighboring; singular masculine ablative from
 propinquus, propinqua, propinquum
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quia: because
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 rēge: king; singular masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
 rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
 rēgnantibus: reigning; plural ablative present participle from
 rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 Rōmānō: Roman; singular masculine ablative from Rōmānūs, -a
 -um
 sānctō: holy
 sānctus: holy, saint
 sciēns: knowing; singular nominative present participle from
 sciō, scire, scīvī, scitus
 Scottōs: the Scots
 Segerum: Segerus, a companion to Saint Patrick
 seniōrem: elder, older; singular common accusative from senex,
 senis (gen.), senior -or -us, -
 simul: at the same time as
 suādēte: persuading; singular ablative present participle from
 suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus
 summū: highest, greatest; plural feminine genitive from
 summa, summae
 sūmp̄it: he took up; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 sūmō, sūmēre, sūmp̄ī, sūmp̄tus
 Theodosiō: Theodosius; (Emperor Theodosius 379-395); singular
 masculine ablative from Theodosius, Theodosii
 Valentiānō: Valens; (Emperor Flavius Julius Valens 364-378 lost
 at Adrianople); singular masculine ablative from Valens,
 Valentis
 ventūra: coming (in the future); plural neuter nominative future
 participle from
 Victor: the name of an angel; singular masculine nominative
 from victor, victōris
 vocābātū: he was called, summoned; 3rd person singular
 imperfect passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

52 Tunc acceptis benedictiōnibus perfectisque¹ omnibus in nōmine Sāctaē Trīnitātis parātam ascendit nāvī et pervēnit ad Brittāniā et praedicāvit ibī nōn multī diēbus et āmissīs² omnibus ambulandī ānfrāctibus summā vēlōcitātē flātūque prōsperō mare Hibernicū cum nāvī dēscendit. Onerāta vērō nāvis cum trānsmarīnīs mīrābilībus³ et spīritālibus thēsaurīs perrēxit ad Hiberniā et baptīzāvit eōs.

53 Ā mundī prīncipiō usque ad baptismū Hibernēnsiū 5330 annī sunt. In quīntō annō Loygāre rēgis exōrsus est praedicāre fidem Chrīstī.

¹*Then having accepted benedictions and having finished everything that was prepared in the name of the Holy Trinity.*

²*And having left all the winding paths of walking, and with great speed and a prosperous wind he came down with the ship to the Irish sea. It's unclear what the winding paths of walking means.*

³*With overseas marvels and spiritual treasures. No further detail on what these are is given.*

ā: from, out of, by, since	Trinitātis: Trinity; singular feminine genitive from Trinitas,
acceptis: having been received; plural ablative perfect passive participle from accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus	Trinitatis
ad: to, towards, at, according to	tunc: then
ambulandi: walking; singular masculine genitive gerund from ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātus	ūsque: until, all the way, up until
āmissis: having been left; plural ablative perfect passive participle from āmittō, āmittere, āmisi, āmissus	vēlōcitatē: speed; singular feminine ablative from vēlōcitatās,
ānfractibus: bends, curves, turnings; plural masculine ablative from ānfrāctus, ānfrāctus	vēlōcitatās
anni: years; plural masculine nominative from annus, annī	vērō: truly, even so, still
anno: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī	
ascendit: he ascended; 3rd person singular perfect active from ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascensus	
baptismum: baptism; singular masculine accusative from baptismus, baptismī	
baptizāvit: he baptized; 3rd person singular perfect active from baptizō, baptizāre, baptizāvī, baptizātus	
benedictiōnibus: benedictions, blessing; plural feminine ablative from benedictiō, benedictiōnis	
Brittaniā: Britain (accusative case)	
Christī: Christ; singular masculine genitive from Christus, Christī	
cum: with	
dēscendit: he descended, went down; 3rd person singular perfect active from dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēnsus	
diēbus: days; plural common ablative from diēs, diēi	
eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id	
et: and	
exōrsus: exōrsus est = he began; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from exōrdiō, exōrdīrī, exōrsus	
fidem: faith; singular feminine accusative from fidēs, fideī	
flātū: blowing (wind); singular neuter ablative from flō, flāre, flāvī, flātus	
Hiberniūm: of the Irish	
Hiberniā: Ireland; singular feminine accusative from Hibernia, Hiberniae	
Hibernicūm: Irish	
ibi: there, then	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
Loygare: King Lóegaire mac Néill of Ireland (ablative)	
mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris	
mīrābilis: miracles; plural ablative from mīrābilis, mīrābilis, mīrābile	
multis: many; plural ablative from multus, multa -um, -	
plūrimus -a -um	
mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundī	
nāvī: boat; singular feminine ablative from nāvis, nāvis	
nāvīm: boat; singular feminine accusative from nāvis, nāvis	
nāvis: boat; singular feminine nominative from nāvis, nāvis	
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis	
nōn: not	
omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne	
onerāta: having been burdened; plural neuter nominative perfect passive participle from onerō, onerāre, onerāvī, onerātus	
parātam: having been prepared; singular feminine accusative perfect passive participle from parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus	
perfectis: having been accomplished; plural ablative perfect passive participle from perficiō, perficere, perfecī, perfectus	
perrēxit: he proceeded; 3rd person singular perfect active from pergō, pergere, perrēxi, perrēctus	
pervenīt: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from perveniō, pervenire, pervenī, perventus	
praedicāre: to preach; present infinitive from praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvī, praedicātus	
praedicāvit: he preached; 3rd person singular perfect active from praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvī, praedicātus	
prīncipiō: beginning, origin; singular neuter ablative from principium, principiī	
prosperō: favorable, prosperous; singular masculine ablative from prosperus, prospera -um, prosperior -or -us, prosperrimus -a -um	
quīntō: fifth	
rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis	
sānctae: holy	
spīritālibus: spiritual; plural ablative from spīritālis, spīritālis, spīritāle	
summā: highest, greatest; singular feminine ablative from summa, summae	
sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	
thēsauri: treasures; plural masculine ablative from thēsaurus, thēsaurī	
trānsmarīnīs: overseas; plural ablative from trānsmarīnus, trānsmarina, trānsmarīnum	

54 Sānctus itaque Patricius ēvangelium Chrīstī externīs nātiōnibus per annōs quadrāgintā praedicābat, virtūtēs apostolicās faciēbat, caecōs illūminābat, leprōsōs mundābat, surdōs audīre faciēbat, daemonēs obsessīs corporibus fugiēbat, mortuōs numerō usque¹ ad novem suscitāvit, captīvōs multōs utriusque sexūs suīs propriīs dōnīs redēmit. Scripsit abegetōria² trecenta sexāgintā quīnque aut eō amplius. Ecclēsiās quoque eōdem numerō fundāvit trecentās sexāgintā quīnque aut eō amplius, in quibus Spīritus Deī erat. Presbytērōs autem usque ad tria mīlia ūrūnāvit et duodecim mīlia hominum in ūnā regiōne Conachtā ad fidem Chrīstī convertit et baptīzāvit et septem rēgēs, quī erant filiī Amolgith, in ūnō diē baptīzāvit. Quadrāgintā diēbus et quadrāgintā noctibus in cacūmine collis Eīle ieiūnāvit, id est Cruachan Eile; in quō colle in aere imminente³ trēs petītiōnēs prō hīs, quī fidem ex Hibernēnsibus recēpērunt, clēmenter postulāvit.

¹*He raised a number, up to nine, of the dead.*

²*He wrote 365 or more primers. abegetōria is likely a variant spelling from abecedārium, which, strictly speaking, is a book teaching the alphabet. Here the meaning is more likely a primer on the Christian faith.*

³*On which hill he gently requested, sending three petitions into the air for these, those of the Irish who received the faith. See next page for the contents of the three petitions.*

abegetoria: possibly 'primer books', perhaps a corruption of abecedārium, abecedārī
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aere: in the air; singular masculine ablative from āēr, āeris
 Amolgit̄h: father of seven kings
 amplius: more; singular neuter nominative from amplus, amplia
 -um, amplior -or -us, amplissimus -a -um
 annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from annus, annī
 apostolicās: apostolic; plural feminine accusative from
 apostolicus, apostolica, apostolicum
 audīre: to hear; present infinitive from audio, audire, audivi,
 auditus
 aut: or
 autem: but, however, moreover
 baptizāvit: he baptized; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 baptizō, baptizāre, baptizāvī, baptizātus
 cacūmine: peak, extremity; singular neuter ablative from
 cacūmen, cacūminis
 caecōs: blind; plural masculine accusative from caecus, caeca
 -um, caecior -or -us, caecissimus -a -um
 captivōs: captives; plural masculine accusative from captivus,
 captiva, captivum
 Christi: Christ; singular masculine genitive from Christus,
 Christi
 clementer: gently, leniently; adverb from clēmēns
 colle: hill; singular masculine ablative from collis, collis
 collis: of the hill; singular masculine genitive from collis, collis
 Conachta: Connacht, a province of Ireland
 convertī: he turned; 3rd person singular present active from
 convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus
 corporibus: bodies; plural neuter ablative from corpus, corporis
 Cruachan: Cruachan Eile, Croghan Hill
 daemōnēs: demons; plural masculine accusative from daemōn,
 daemōnis
 Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēi
 diēbus: days; plural common ablative from diēs, diēi
 dōnīs: gifts; plural neuter ablative from dōnum, dōnī
 duodecim: two
 ecclēsiās: churches; plural feminine accusative from ecclēsia,
 ecclēsiae
 Eile: Croghan Hill
 eō: from it; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
 eōdem: the same;(pronoun)
 erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fūi, futūrus
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fūi, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fūi, futūrus
 et: and
 ēvangelīum: gospel; singular neuter nominative from
 Ēvangelīum, Evangelī
 ex: out of, from
 extērnīs: foreign; plural ablative from extēnus, extērna,
 extērnum
 faciēbat: he was performing, doing; 3rd person singular
 imperfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 fidēm: faith; singular feminine accusative from fidēs, fideī
 filiī: sons; plural masculine nominative from filius, fili
 fugiēbat: he cast out (based on context), he shunned; 3rd
 person singular imperfect active from fugiō, fugere, fūgī,
 fugitus
 fundāvit: he founded; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 fundō, fundāre, fundāvi, fundātus
 Hibernēnsibus: Irishmen (plural ablative)
 hīs: for these; plural masculine ablative of hic, haec, hoc
 hominūm: of men; plural masculine genitive from homō, hominis
 id: it
 ieiūnāvit: he fasted; 3rd person singular perfect from ieiūnō,
 ieiūnāre
 illūminābat: he gave sight (literally brightened); 3rd person
 singular imperfect from illūminō, illūmināre, illūmināvī,
 illūminātus
 imminēte: sending; ablative participle from imminēre
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 itaque: so then, therefore
 leprōsōs: lepers; plural common accusative from leprōsus,
 leprōsī
 mīlia: one thousand
 mortuōs: dead; plural masculine accusative from mortuus,
 mortuī
 multōs: many; plural masculine accusative from multus, multa
 -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 mundābat: he was cleansing; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active from mundō, mundāre, mundāvī, mundātus
 nātiōnībus: race, tribe, nation; plural feminine ablative from
 nātiō, nātiōnis
 noctībus: nights; plural feminine ablative from nox, noctis
 novem: nine; from novem, nonus -a -um, noveni -ae -a, novie (n)s
 numerō: number; singular masculine ablative from numerus,
 numerī
 obsēssī: having been besieged; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from obsēdeō, obsēdēre, obsēdī, obsēssus
 ordināvit: he ordained, set in order; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from ordinō, ordināre, ordināvī, ordinātus
 Patricius: Saint Patrick
 per: through
 petītiōnēs: petitions; plural feminine nominative or accusative
 from petītiō, petītiōnis
 postulāvit: he asked for; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus
 praedicābat: he preached; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvī, praedicātus
 presbyterōs: elders, presbyters; plural masculine accusative
 from presbyter, presbyteri
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 propriīs: own, personal, individual; plural ablative from
 proprius, propria, proprium
 quadrāgintā: 40
 qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quibūs: what; plural dative or ablative of qui
 quinque: five
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 recēpērunt: they received, they kept back; 3rd person plural
 perfect active from recipiō, recipere, recipē, receptus
 redēmit: he bought back, redeemed; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from redimō, redimere, redēmī, redēmptus
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from
 rēx, rēgis
 regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 sānctus: holy, saint
 scripsit: he wrote
 septēm: seven
 sexāgintā: sixty
 sexūs: sex (male or female); singular masculine genitive from
 sexus, sexūs
 spīritus: spirit, breath; singular masculine nominative from
 spīritus, spīritūs
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 surdōs: mute, silent; plural masculine accusative from surdus,
 surdā, surdūm
 suscitāvit: he stirred up, he awakened; 3rd person singular
 perfect active from suscitō, suscitāre, suscitāvī, suscitātus
 trecentā: 300
 trecentās: 300
 trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius
 -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 tria: three
 ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from ūnus -a -um, pīmus -a
 -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ūnō: one; singular masculine ablative from ūnus -a -um, pīmus
 -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 utriūs: either; singular genitive from uter, utra, utrum
 virtūtēs: virtue, manliness, power; plural feminine nominative
 from virtūs, virtūtūs

Prīma petītiō eius est, ut dīcunt Scottī, ut susciperet ūnusquisque paenitentiam, licet¹ in extrēmō vītae suaē statū: secunda, ut nē ā barbarīs cōnsūmentur in aeternū: tertia, ut nōn supervīxerit² aliquis Hibernensium in adventū iūdiciī, quia dēlēbuntur prō honōre Patriciī septem annīs ante iūdiciū. In illō autem tumulō benedīxit populīs Hiberniae et ideō ascendit, ut ḍrāret prō eīs et vidēret frūctum labōris suī. Et vēnērunt ad eum avēs multī colōris innumerābilēs, ut benedīceret illīs, quod significat omnēs sānctōs utriusque sexūs Hibernensium pervenīre ad eum in diē iūdiciī ad patrem et ad magistrum suum, ut sequantur illum ad iūdiciū. Posteā in senectūte bonā migrāvit, ubi nunc laetātur in saecula saeculōrum. Āmēn.

¹*Even if at the end of his life.*

²*That no one of Ireland will live into the Day of Judgement, because they will be removed, for the honor of Patrick, seven years before judgement.* The gloss I've given here is less literal; presumably Patrick wasn't simply calling for the Irish to die but rather that they would avoid some form of judgement. Perhaps this is similar to the idea of the rapture within dispensational premillennialism.

ā: from, out of, by, since	saeculum, saeculī
ad: to, towards, at, according to	saeculōrum: of ages, generations; plural neuter genitive from saeculum, saeculi
adventū: arrival, approach; singular neuter ablative from advenio, advenire, adveni, adventus	sānctōs: holy
aeternū: eternal; singular neuter nominative from aeternus, aeterna -um, aeternior -or -us, aeternissimus -a -um	Scotti: the Scots
aliquis: someone	secunda: second; singular feminine nominative from duo -ae o,
amen: amen, truly, verily	secundus -a -um, bīnī -ae -a, bis
annī: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī	senectūte: old age; singular feminine ablative from senectūs, senectūtis
ante: before, in front, forwards	septem: seven
ascendit: he ascended; 3rd person singular perfect active from ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascensus	sequantur: they follow; 3rd person plural present subjunctive from sequor, sequi, sécūtus
autem: but, however, moreover	sexūs: sex (male or female); singular masculine genitive from sexus, sexūs
avēs: birds; plural feminine nominative from avis, avis	significat: it signifies; 3rd person singular present active from significō, significāre, significāvī, significātus
barbarīs: barbarous; plural ablative from barbarus, barbara -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -a -um	statū: state, status; singular neuter ablative from stō, stāre, steti, status
benediceret: he might bless; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from benedicō, benedicere, benedixi, benedictus	suae: her; singular feminine gen. or dat. or plural feminine nom. or voc. from suus
benedixit: he blessed; 3rd person singular perfect active from benedicō, benedicere, benedixi, benedictus	suī: of him; singular or plural genitive of se
bonā: good; plural neuter ablative from bonum, boni	supervixerit: he will have survived; 3rd person singular perfect active subjunctive from supervivo, supervivere, supervixi, -susciperet: he undertook; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from suspiciō, suspicere, suscipē, susceptus
colōris: color; singular masculine genitive from color, colōris	suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
cōsūmentur: they will be consumed; 3rd person plural future passive from cōsūmō, cōsūmēre, cōsūmpsi, cōsūmptus	tertia: third; singular feminine nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
dēlēbuntur: they will be removed; 3rd person plural future passive from dēlēō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus	tumulū: mound, hill; singular masculine ablative from tumulus, tumuli
dicunt: they say; 3rd person plural present active from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus	ubī: where
diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēi	ūnusquisque: each one
eīs: to them; plural ablative from is, ea, id	ut: so that
eiūs: his/her/its	utrius: either; singular genitive from uter, utra, utrum
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	vēnērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
et: and	vidēret: he saw; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from videō, vidēre, vidi, visus
eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id	vītāe: life; singular feminine genitive from vita, vītāe
extrēmō: limit, outside, end; singular masculine ablative from extremus, extremini	
frūctū: fruit; singular neuter nominative perfect participle from frūctus, frūctūs	
Hibernēnum: of the Irish	
Hiberniae: of Ireland (genitive case)	
honore: honor; singular masculine ablative from honor, honōris	
ideō: for that reason	
illīs: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud	
illō: that; singular masculine or neuter ablative from ille, illa, illud	
illum: that; singular feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
innumerābile: countless; plural common nominative from innumerābilis, innumerābilis, innumerābile	
iūdicū: judgement; singular neuter genitive from iūdiciū, iūdicī	
iūdiciū: judgement; singular neuter accusative from iūdiciū, iūdicī	
labōris: labor; singular masculine genitive from labor, labōris	
laetātū: he is glad; 3rd person singular present from laetor, laetārī, laetātus	
licet: even if, although	
magistrū: teacher; singular masculine accusative from magister, magistri	
migrāvit: he departed; 3rd person singular perfect active from migrō, migrāre, migrāvī, migrātus	
multi: many; singular masculine genitive from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um	
nē: not	
nōn: not	
nunc: now	
omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne	
ōrāret: he prayed; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus	
paenitentiam: penitence, repentance; singular feminine accusative from paenitentia, paenitentiae	
patrem: father; singular masculine accusative from pater, patris	
Patriciū: of Saint Patrick	
pervenīre: to come to, to arrive; present infinitive from perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, pervēntus	
petitiō: petition; singular feminine nominative from petitiō, petitiōnis	
populūs: people, populace; plural masculine dative from populus, populi	
posteā: thereafter, later	
prīma: first; singular feminine nominative from prīmus, prīma, prīmūm	
prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of	
quia: because	
quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui	
saecula: ages, generations; plural neuter accusative from	

55 Quattuor modīs aequantur¹ Moysēs et Patricius: id est angelō colloquente in rubō igneō: secundō modō in monte quadrāgintā diēbus et quadrāgintā noctibus ieūnāvit: tertīō modō similēs fuērunt aetāte 120 annīs: quārtō modō sepulchrum illīus nēmō scit, sed in occultō humātus² est nēmine sciente. Quīndecim annīs in captīvitāte, in vīcēsimō quīntō annō ab Amathēō sānctō epīscopō subrogātur, octōgintā et quīnque annīs in Hiberniā praedicāvit³. Rēs autem exigēbat⁴ amplius loquī dē Sānctō Patriciō, sed tamen prō compendiō sermōnis voluī breviāre.

¹*In four ways Moses and Patrick are compared.*

²*But in secret they were buried (with) no one knowing.*

³*Some of these times overlap; assuming the 85 years in Ireland went right up until his death, he started preaching in Ireland when he was 120-85=35 years old.*

⁴*The thing (that is, the account of the life of Saint Patrick) demanded to speak more of Saint Patrick.*

ab: from, out of, by, since
 aequantur: they are compared; 3rd person plural present
 passive from aequō, aequāre, aequāvī, aequātus
 aetāte: lifetime, age; singular feminine ablative from aetās,
 aetātis
 amplius: ampler, larger; singular neuter accusative from
 amplus, ampla -um, amplior -or -us, amplissimus -a -um
 angelō: angel; singular masculine ablative from angelus, angelī
 annī: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī
 anno: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
 Amathēō: Amatheus, the archbishop and king who ordained
 Saint Patrick to the bishopric
 autem: but, however, moreover
 breviāre: to shorten, abbreviate; present infinitive from breviō,
 breviāre, breviāvī, breviātus
 captivitāte: captivity; singular feminine ablative from captivitās,
 captivitātis
 colloquente: discussing; singular ablative present participle
 from colloquor, colloqui, collocūtus sum
 compendio: shortening, abbreviating; singular neuter ablative
 from compendium, compendiī
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 diēbus: days; plural common ablative from diēs, diēi
 episcopō: overseer, bishop; singular masculine ablative from
 episcopus, episcopī
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 exigēbat: it was demanding; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active from exigō, exigere, exēgī, exāctus
 fuērunt: they were; 3rd person plural perfect active from sum,
 esse, fuī, futūrus
 Hiberniā: Ireland; singular feminine ablative from Hibernia,
 Hiberniae
 humātus: humātus est = he was buried; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from humō, humāre,
 humāvī, humātus
 id: it
 iēiūnāvit: he fasted; 3rd person singular perfect from iēiūnō,
 iēiūnāre
 ignēō: fiery; singular masculine ablative from igneus, ignea,
 igneum
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 loquī: to speak, to say; present infinitive from loquor, loquī,
 locūtus
 modis: ways; plural masculine ablative from modus, modī
 modō: way; singular masculine ablative from modus, modī
 monte: mountain; singular masculine ablative from mōns,
 montis
 Moyses: Moses; singular masculine nominative from Moyses,
 Moysis
 nēmine: no one; singular common ablative from nēmō, nēminis
 nēmō: no one; singular common nominative from nēmō, nēminis
 noctibus: nights; plural feminine ablative from nox, noctis
 occultō: secrecy; singular neuter ablative from occultum, occultī
 octōginta: 80; from octōginta, octōgēsimus -a -um, octōgēnī -ae
 -a, octōgīē (n)s
 Patriciō: of Saint Patrick
 Patricius: Saint Patrick
 praedicāvit: he preached; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvī, praedicātus
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 quadrāgintā: 40
 quartō: fourth; singular masculine ablative from quattuor,
 quartus -a -um, quaterni -ae -a,-
 quattuor: 4
 quīndecim: fifteen; from quīndecim, quīndecimus -a -um,
 quīndeci -ae -a, quīndecie (n)s
 quinque: five
 quīntō: fifth
 rēs: thing; singular feminine nominative from rēs, reī
 rubō: thornbush; singular masculine ablative from rubus, rubī
 sānctō: holy
 scientē: knowing; singular ablative present participle from sciō,
 scīre, scīvī, scītus
 scit: he knows; 3rd person singular present from sciō, scīre,
 scīvī, scītum
 secundō: second
 sed: but
 sepulchrum: grave; singular neuter accusative from
 sepulchrum, sepulchrī
 sermōnis: conversation, speech; plural masculine genitive from
 sermō, sermōnis
 similēs: similar; plural masculine nominative from similis, simile
 subrogatur: he is elected; 3rd person singular present passive
 from subrogō, subrogāre, subrogāvī, subrogātus
 tamen: however
 tertīō: third; singular masculine ablative from trēs -es -ia,

tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 vīcēsimō: twentieth; singular masculine ablative from viginti,
 vicesimus -a -um, vici -ae -a, vīcie (n)s
 volūi: I wanted; 1st person singular perfect active from volō,
 velle, volūi, -

IV. Arthuriāna

56 In illō tempore Saxonēs invalēscēbant in multitūdine et crēscēbant in Brittanniā.

Mortuō autem Hengistō Octha filius eius trānsīvit dē sinistrālī parte Britanniae ad rēgnum Cantōrum et dē ipsō ortī sunt rēgēs Cantōrum. Tunc Arthur pugnābat contrā illōs in illīs diēbus cum rēgibus Brittōnum, sed ipse erat dux¹ bellōrum. Prīmum bellum fuit in ōstium flūminis quod dīcitur Glein. Secundum et tertium et quārtum et quīntum super aliud flūmen, quod dīcitur Dubglās et est in regiōne Linnuis. Sextum bellum super flūmen, quod vocātur Bassās. Septimum fuit bellum in silvā Celidōnis, id est Cat Coit Celidōn. Octāvum fuit bellum in castellō Guinnion, in quō Arthur portāvit imāginem Sānctae Marīae perpetuae virginis super humerōs suōs et pāgānī versī sunt in fugam in illō diē et caedēs magna fuit super illōs per virtūtem Dominī nostrī Iēsu Chrīstī et per virtūtem Sānctae Marīae genetrīcis eius.

¹It's interesting to note that the author specifically calls Arthur a *dux bellōrum* and not a king.

ad: to, towards, at, according to	ōstium, ōstīū
aliud: other; singular neuter accusative from <i>alius</i> , <i>alia</i> , <i>aliud</i>	pāgānī: pagans; plural masculine nominative from <i>pāgānus</i> , <i>pāgānī</i>
Arthur: the Arthur often referred to as King Arthur	parte: part; singular feminine ablative from <i>pars</i> , <i>partis</i>
Arthuriāna: things related to Arthur	per: through
autem: but, however, moreover	perpetuae: perpetual; singular feminine genitive from
Bassās: the name of a river	perpetuus, <i>perpetua</i> , <i>perpetuum</i>
bellōrum: of battles, wars; plural neuter genitive from <i>bellum</i> , <i>belli</i>	portavī: he carried; 3rd person singular perfect active from
bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative or accusative from <i>bellum</i> , <i>belli</i>	<i>porto</i> , <i>portare</i> , <i>portavi</i> , <i>portatus</i>
Britanniae: Britain; singular feminine genitive from <i>Britannia</i> , <i>Britanniae</i>	prīmū: first; singular neuter nominative from <i>prīmus</i> , <i>prīma</i> , <i>prīmū</i>
Brittannia: Britain	pugnābat: he was fighting; 3rd person singular imperfect active from <i>pugnō</i> , <i>pugnāre</i> , <i>pugnāvī</i> , <i>pugnātus</i>
Brittōnum: of the Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine genitive from <i>Brittō</i> , <i>Brittōnis</i>	quārtūm: fourth
caedēs: slaughter; singular feminine nominative from <i>caedēs</i> , <i>caedis</i>	quintūm: fifth
Cantorum: of Kent, the region in Britain	quō: what; singular ablative of <i>quis</i>
castellō: castle, stronghold; singular neuter ablative from <i>castellum</i> , <i>castelli</i>	quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of <i>qui</i>
Cat Coit Celidōn: a forest	rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative from <i>rēx</i> , <i>rēgīs</i>
Celidonis: Cat Coit Celidōn, a forest	rēgībus: kings; plural masculine ablative from <i>rēx</i> , <i>rēgīs</i>
Christī: Christ; singular masculine genitive from <i>Christus</i> , <i>Christī</i>	regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from <i>regiō</i> , <i>regiōnis</i>
contrā: against, away from, facing	rēgnū: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from <i>rēgnū</i> ,
crēscēbant: they were increasing; 3rd person plural imperfect active from <i>crēscō</i> , <i>crēscere</i> , <i>crēvī</i> , <i>crētūs</i>	<i>rēgnī</i>
cum: with	sānctaē: holy
dē: of, from, away from, down from	Saxonēs: The Saxons
dicitur: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from <i>dīcō</i> , dicere, <i>dīxī</i> , <i>dīctus</i>	secundūm: second
diē: day; singular common ablative from <i>diēs</i> , <i>diēī</i>	sed: but
diēbus: days; plural common ablative from <i>diēs</i> , <i>diēī</i>	septimum: seventh
Dominī: of the lord; singular masculine genitive from <i>dominus</i> , <i>domīnī</i>	sextūm: sixth
Dubglas: the name of a river	silvā: forest; singular feminine ablative from <i>silva</i> , <i>silvae</i>
dux: leader; singular masculine nominative from <i>dux</i> , <i>ducis</i>	sinistrālī: left (either north or west), singular feminine ablative from <i>sinistra</i> , <i>sinistrae</i>
eius: his/her/its	sunt: they were; 3rd person plural present for <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fuī</i> , <i>futūrus</i>
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fuī</i> , <i>futūrus</i>	suōs: their; plural accusative of <i>suus</i>
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fuī</i> , <i>futūrus</i>	super: above, on top of
et: and	tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from <i>tempus</i> , <i>temporis</i>
filiū: son; singular masculine nominative from <i>filius</i> , <i>filiū</i>	tertium: third; singular neuter nominative from <i>trēs</i> -es -ia, <i>tertius</i> -a -um, <i>terti</i> -ae -a, <i>ter</i>
flūmen: river; singular neuter nominative or accusative from <i>flūmen</i> , <i>flūminis</i>	transītī: he crossed; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>trānseō</i> , <i>trānsire</i> , <i>trānsīvī</i> (<i>ii</i>), <i>trānsitus</i>
flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from <i>flūmen</i> , <i>flūminis</i>	tunc: then
fugam: flight, escape; singular feminine accusative from <i>fuga</i> , <i>fugae</i>	versī: versī sunt = they turned; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from <i>vertō</i> , <i>vertere</i> , <i>vertī</i> , <i>versum</i>
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fuī</i> , <i>futūrus</i>	virginīs: virgin; singular feminine genitive from <i>virgō</i> , <i>virginis</i>
genētrīcīs: mother; singular feminine genitive from <i>genētrīx</i> , <i>genētrīcīs</i>	virtūtēm: virtue, manliness, power; singular feminine accusative from <i>virtūs</i> , <i>virtūtis</i>
Glein: the name of a river	vocātū: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
Guinnion: the name of a castle	<i>vocō</i> , <i>vocārē</i> , <i>vocāvī</i> , <i>vocātus</i>
Hengistō: Hengist, a Saxon warrior (ablative case)	
humeroīs: shoulders; plural masculine accusative from <i>humerus</i> , <i>humeri</i>	
id: it	
Iēsū: Jesus, genitive singular of <i>Iēsūs</i>	
illīs: those; plural dative or ablative from <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i>	
illō: these; singular masculine or neuter ablative from <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i>	
illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i>	
imāgīnēm: image; singular feminine accusative from <i>imāgō</i> , <i>imāgīnis</i>	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
invalēscēbant: they were growing strong; 3rd person plural imperfect active from <i>invalēscō</i> , <i>invalēscere</i> , <i>invaluī</i> , -	
ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from <i>ipse</i> , <i>ipsa</i> , <i>ipsum</i>	
ipsoī: he himself; singular masculine ablative from <i>ipse</i> , <i>ipsa</i> , <i>ipsum</i>	
IV: 4 as a Roman numeral	
Linnūs: the name of a region	
māgna: large; singular feminine nominative from <i>māgnus</i> , <i>māgna</i> -um, <i>major</i> -or -us, <i>maximus</i> -a -um	
Marīae: of Mary; singular feminine genitive from <i>Marīa</i> , <i>Marīae</i>	
mortuō: having died; singular masculine ablative perfect participle from <i>moriōr</i> , <i>mōrī</i> , <i>mortuūs</i> sum	
multitūdīne: multitude, great number; singular feminine ablative from <i>multitūdō</i> , <i>multitūdīnis</i>	
nostrī: our; sing. masc. gen. or pl. masc. nom. or sing. neut. gen. of noster	
octāvūm: 8th	
Octha: Octha, son of Hengist	
ortī: ortī sunt: they arose; plural masculine nominative perfect participle from <i>orīor</i> , <i>orīrī</i> , <i>ortus</i>	
ōstium: mouth (of a river); singular neuter nominative from	

Nōnum bellum gestum est in urbe Legiōnis. Decimum gessit bellum in lītore flūminis, quod vocātur Tribruit. Ūndecimum factum est bellum in monte, quī dīcitur Agned. Duodecimum fuit bellum in monte Badōnis, in quō corruērunt in ūnō diē nōngentī sexāgintā virī dē ūnō impetū Arthur; et nēmō prōstrāvit eōs nisi ipse sōlus, et in omnibus bellīs victor extitit. Et ipsī, dum in omnibus bellīs prōsternēbantur, auxilium ā Germāniā petēbant et augēbantur multipliciter sine intermissione et rēgēs ā Germāniā dēdūcēbant, ut rēgnārent super illōs in Brittanniā usque ad tempus quō īdā rēgnāvit, quī fuit Eobba filius. Ipse fuit prīmus rēx in Beornīcā.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Agned: the name of a mountain
 Arthur: Arthur, often referred to as King Arthur
 augēbantur: they were being increased; 3rd person plural
 imperfect passive from augēō, augēre, auxī, auctus
 auxilium: help, aid; singular neuter accusative from auxilium,
 auxiliū
 Badonis: the name of a mountain
 Beornica: Bernicia, an Anglo-Saxon kingdom
 bellis: battles, wars; plural neuter ablative from bellum, bellī
 bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative or accusative
 from bellum, bellī
 Brittannia: Britain
 corruērunt: they fell, collapsed; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from corruō, corruere, corruī, corrusus
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 decimum: tenth
 dēdūcēbant: they were leading out; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxi, dēductus
 dīcitur: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from dīcō,
 dīcere, dīxi, dīctus
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēī
 dum: while, as long as, until
 duodecimum: twelfth
 Eobba: father of Ida
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 et: and
 extitit: he stood out; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 extō, extāre, extiti, -
 factum: factum est = it was made; singular neuter nominative
 perfect passive participle from faciō, facere, fecī, factus
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, filī
 flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from flūmen, flūminis
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 Germāniā: Germany; singular feminine ablative from Germānia,
 Germāniāe
 gessit: he waged, carried; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus
 gestum: gestum est = it was waged; singular neuter nominative
 perfect passive participle from gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus
 Ida: a king
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 impetū: attack, assault, fury; singular masculine ablative from
 impetus, impetūs
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 intermissiōne: intermission, interruption; singular feminine
 ablative from intermissiō, intermissiōnis
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 ipsī: they themselves; plural masculine nominative from ipse,
 ipsa, ipsum
 Legiōnis: a city
 litore: beach, shore; singular neuter ablative from lītus, lītoris
 monte: mountain; singular masculine ablative from mōns,
 montis
 multipliciter: numerously
 nēmō: no one; singular common nominative from nēmō, nēminis
 nīsī: if not, unless
 nōgentī: 900
 nōnum: ninth
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 petēbant: they were asking for; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from petō, petere, petīvī, petitus
 prīmus: first; singular masculine nominative from prīmus,
 prīma, prīmū
 prosternēbantur: they were being stricken down; 3rd person
 plural imperfect passive from prosternō, prosternere,
 prostrāvī, prostrātus
 prostrāvit: he prostrated; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from prosternō, prosternere, prostrāvī, prostrātus
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from
 rēx, rēgis
 rēgnārent: they had reigned; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 subjunctive from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 sexāgintā: sixty
 sine: without
 sōlus: alone; singular masculine nominative from sōlus, sōla,
 sōlum (gen. -ius)
 super: above, on top of
 tempus: time, period; singular neuter nominative from tempus,
 temporis

Tribruit: the name of a river
 ūndecimum: eleventh
 ūnō: one; singular masculine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus
 -a -um, singuli -ae -a, semel
 urbe: city; singular feminine ablative from urbs, urbīs
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 vīctor: vīctor; singular masculine nominative from vīctor,
 victōris
 vīrī: man; singular neuter genitive from vīrus, vīrī
 vōcātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vōcō, vōcāre, vōcātus

V. Regum Geneālogiae cum Computō

57 Wodēn genuit Beldeg, genuit Beornec, genuit Gechbrond, genuit Alusōn, genuit Inguec, genuit Aedibrith, genuit Ossā, genuit Eobba, genuit Īda.

Īda autem duodecim filiōs habuit, quōrum nōmina sunt Addā, Aedldric, Decdric, Edric, Deothere, Osmer, et ūnam rēgīnam Bearnoch, Ealric, Ealdric genuit Aelfret. Ipse est Aedlfred Fleasur. nam et ipse habuit filiōs septem, quōrum nōmina sunt Anfrid, Osguald, Osbiu, Osgudu, Oslapf, Offa, Osguid genuit Alcfrid, et Aelfguin, et Echfrid.

Echfrid ipse est quī fēcit bellum contrā frātruēlem suum, quī erat rēx Pictōrum nōmine Birdēi et ibī corruit cum omnī rōbore exercitus suī et Pictī cum rēge suō victōrēs extitērunt et numquam addidērunt Saxonēs ambrōnum¹ ut ā Pictīs vectīgal exigerent. Ā tempore istīus bellī vocātur Gueith Līn Garan.

Osguid autem habuit duās uxōrēs, quārum ūna vocābātur Riemmelth filia Royth filiī Rum et alter vocābātur Eanfled filiā Eadguin filiī Allī.

¹*And the Picts with their king emerged as victors and the Saxons never acquired of the barbarians so that the Picts would pay tribute.*

ā: from, out of, by, since	Osguid: one of the seven sons of Aedlfred Fleasur
Addā: one of the twelve sons of Ida	Oslapf: one of the seven sons of Aedlfred Fleasur
addiderunt: they acquired; 3rd person plural perfect active from addō, addere, addidī, additus	Osmer: one of the twelve sons of Ida
Aedibirth: an ancestor of Ida	Ossā: an ancestor of Ida
Aedldric: one of the twelve sons of Ida	Picti: Picts, a Scottish tribe;
Aedlfred	Pictis: Picts, a Scottish tribe (ablative case)
Aelfguin: a descendant of Osguid	Pictōrum: of the Picts
Aelfret: a descendant of Ida	quārum: which; plural female genitive from qui
Alcfrid: a descendant of Osguid	qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
Alli: grandfather of Eanfled	quōrum: of which; plural masc or neut. genitive of quis
alter: the other; singular masculine nominative from alter,	rēge: king; singular masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
altera, alterum	rēginam: queen; singular feminine accusative from rēgina,
Aluson: an ancestor of Ida	rēginae
ambrōnum: of the barbarians; plural masculine genitive from ambro, ambronis	rēgum: of kings; plural masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
Anfrid: one of the seven sons of Aedlfred Fleasur	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
autem: but, however, moreover	Riemmelth: one of the wives of Osguid
Bearnoch: a descendant of Ida	rōbore: strength; singular neuter ablative from rōbur, rōboris
Beldeg: an ancestor of Ida	Royth: an ancestor of Riemmelth
bellī: battle, war; singular neuter genitive from bellum, bellī	Rum: an ancestor of Riemmelth
bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative or accusative from bellum, bellī	Saxonēs: The Saxons
cum: with	septem: seven
Decdric: one of the twelve sons of Ida	sui: of him; singular or plural genitive of se
Deothere: one of the twelve sons of Ida	sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse,
duās: two; plural feminine accusative from duo -ae o, secundus -a -um, bīni -ae -a, bis	fui, futūrus
duodecim: twelve	suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
Eadguin: an ancestor of Eanfled	suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
Ealdric: a descendant of Ida	tempore: time, period; singular neuter from tempus, temporis
Ealric: a descendant of Ida	ūna: one; singular feminine nominative from ūnus -a -um,
Eanfled: one of the wives of Osguid	primus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
Echfrid: a descendant of Osguid	ūnam: one; singular feminine accusative from ūnus -a -um,
Edric: one of the twelve sons of Ida	primus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
Eobba: an ancestor of Ida	ut: so that
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus	uxōrēs: wives; plural feminine nominative from uxor, uxōris
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus	V: 5 as a Roman numeral
et: and	vectīgal: tax, tribute, revenue; singular neuter nominative from vectīgal, vectīgalis
exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from exercitus, exercitūs	victōrēs: victors; plural masculine nominative from vīctor, vīctorīs
exigerent: they might have paid; 3rd personal plural subjunctive imperfect from exigere	vocābātur: it was being called, summoned; 3rd person singular imperfect passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
extitērunt: they emerged; 3rd person plural perfect active from extō, extāre, extitū -	vocātū: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
fēcīt: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	Woden: an ancestor of Ida
filia: daughter; singular feminine nominative from filia, filiae	
filii: son; singular masculine genitive from filius, filī	
filīōs: sons; plural masculine accusative from filius, filī	
Fleasur: Aedlfred Fleasur	
fratruēlem: fraternal nephew; singular masculine accusative from frātruēlis, frātruēlis	
Garan: Gueith Lin Garan, a place-name	
Gechbrond: an ancestor of Ida	
geneālogiae: genealogies; plural feminine nominative from geneālogia, genealogiae	
genuit: he begot; 3rd person singular perfect active from gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus	
Gueith: The Isle of Wight, an island just off the southern coast of Great Britain in the English channel. The name Gueith is from Old Welsh.	
habuit: he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus	
ibi: there, then	
Ida: a descendant of Woden	
Inguec: an ancestor of Ida	
ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum	
istīus: of this; singular genitive from iste, ista, istud	
Lin: Gueith Lin Garan, a place-name	
nam: yes, truly	
nōmina: names; plural neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis	
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis	
numquam: never	
Offa: one of the seven sons of Aedlfred Fleasur	
omni: all, every; singular ablative from omnis, omnis, omne	
Osbii: one of the seven sons of Aedlfred Fleasur	
Osguald: one of the seven sons of Aedlfred Fleasur	
Osgudu: one of the seven sons of Aedlfred Fleasur	

Dē geneālogiā rēgum Cantiae.

58 Hengist genuit Octha, genuit Ossā, genuit Eormoric, genuit Ealdbert, genuit Ealdbald, genuit Ercunbert, genuit Ecgberth.

Dē ortū rēgum Eastanglōrum.

59 Woden genuit Casser, genuit Titinōn, genuit Trigil, genuit Rodmunt, genuit Rippa, genuit Guillem Guechān, ipse p̄imus rēgnāvit in Brittanniā super gentem Eastanglōrum. Guecha genuit Guffan, genuit Tydil, genuit Ecnī, genuit Adric, genuit Aldul, genuit Elric.

Dē geneālogiā Merciōrum.

60 Woden genuit Guedolgeat, genuit Gueagōn, genuit Guithleg, genuit Guerdmund, genuit Offa, genuit Ongen, genuit Eamer, genuit Pubba. Ipse Pubba habuit duodecim filiōs, quōrum duo notitiōrēs mihi sunt quam alii, id est Penda et Ēuā filius Penda, filius Pubba. Ecgfrid filius Offa, filius Duminfert, filius Eandulf, filius Ossulf, filius Ēua, filius Pubba.

Adric: a descendant of Guecha
Aldul: a descendant of Guecha
aliū: others; plural masculine nominative from *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*
Brittanniā: in Britain
Cantiae: of Kent
Casser: a descendant of Woden
dē: of, from, away from, down from
Duminfer: a descendant of Pubba
duo: two
duodecim: twelve
Ealdbald: a descendant of Hengist
Ealdbert: a descendant of Hengist
Eamer: a descendant of Woden
Eandulf: a descendant of Pubba
Eastanglorum: of East Anglia
Ecgberth: a descendant of Hengist
Ecgfrid: a descendant of Pubba
Ecni: a descendant of Guecha
Elric: a descendant of Guecha
Eormoric: a descendant of Hengist
Ercunbert: a descendant of Hengist
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fuī, *futūrus*
et: and
Eua: a descendant of Woden
filīōs: sons; plural masculine accusative from *filius*, *fili*
filius: son; singular masculine nominative from *filius*, *fili*
geneālogiā: genealogy; singular feminine ablative from
 geneālogiā, *genealogiāe*
gentem: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from
 gēns, *gentis*
genuit: he begot; 3rd person singular perfect active from *gigno*,
 gignere, *genui*, *genitus*
Gueagōn: a descendant of Woden
Guecha: a descendant of Woden
Guechan: Guillelm Guechān, a descendant of Woden
Guedolgeat: a descendant of Woden
Guerdmund: a descendant of Woden
Guffan: a descendant of Guecha
Guillem: Guillelm Guechān, a descendant of Woden
Guithleg: a descendant of Woden
habuit: he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from *habeō*,
 habēre, *habuī*, *habitus*
Hengist: a Saxon warrior
id: it
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from *ipse*, *ipsa*,
 ipsum
Merciōrum: of Mercia
mihī: to me;(pronoun)
notitiōrēs: more known; variate spelling of the comparative
 from *nōtus* -a -um
Octha: a descendant of Hengist
Offa: a descendant of Woden
Ongen: a descendant of Woden
ortū: beginning, rising; singular neuter ablative from *orior*, *orīrī*,
 ortus sum
Ossā: Ossa, a descendant of Hengist
Ossulf: a descendant of Pubba
Penda: a descendant of Pubba
primus: first; singular masculine nominative from *prīmus*,
 prīma, *prīmum*
Pubba: a descendant of Woden
quam: how? how much?
quōrum: of whom; plural masc or neut. genitive of *quis*
rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 rēgnō, *rēgnāre*, *rēgnāvī*, *rēgnātus*
rēgum: of kings; plural masculine genitive from *rēx*, *rēgis*
Rippan: a descendant of Woden
Rodmunt: a descendant of Woden
sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fuī, *futūrus*
super: above, on top of
Titinōn: a descendant of Woden
Trigil: a descendant of Woden
Tydil: a descendant of Guecha
Woden: an ancestor of many kings in Britain

Dē rēgibus Deurōrum.

61 Woden genuit Beldeyg. Brond genuit Siggar, genuit Sebald, genuit Zegulf, genuit Soemil, ipse prīmus sēparāvit Deur ō Birneich. Soemil genuit Sguerthing, genuit Giulglis, genuit Usfrean, genuit Iffī, genuit Úllī, Aedgum, Osfird, et Eadfird. Duo filiī Edgum erant et cum ipsō corruērunt in bellō Meicen, et dē orīgine illīus numquam iterātum est rēgnum, quia nōn ēvāsit ūnus dē genere illīus dē istō bellō, sed interfectī omnēs sunt cum illō ab exercitū Catguollaūnī rēgis Guendōtae regiōnis. Osguid genuit Ecgfird. Ipse est Ecgfrid Ailguin genuit Oslach, genuit Alhun, genuit Adlsing, genuit Ēchūn, genuit Oslaph. Īda genuit Eadric, genuit Ecgulf, genuit Liodguald, genuit Aetān. Ipse est Eāta Glinmaur genuit Eadbyrth et Ecgbirth epīscopum, quī fuit prīmus dē nātiōne eōrum.

Īda filius Eobba tenuit regiōnēs in sinistrālī parte Brittanniae, id est Umbrī maris, et rēgnāvit annīs duodecim, et ūnxit Dinguayrdī Guurth Berneich.

ab: from, out of, by, since	Oslach: a descendant of Ecgfrid Ailguin
Adlsing: a descendant of Ecgfrid Ailguin	Oslaph: a descendant of Ecgfrid Ailguin
Aedgum: a descendant of Soemil	parte: part; singular feminine ablative from pars, partis
Aetan: a descendant of Ida	prīmus: first; singular masculine nominative from primus, prima, prīmū
Ailguin: Ecgfrid Ailguin	qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
Alhun: a descendant of Ecgfrid Ailguin	quia: because
annīs: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī	regib: kings; plural masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from bellum, bellī	regiōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnīs
Beldey: a descendant of Woden	rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
Birneich: Bernicia, a region in Britain	rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from rēgnō, rēgnārē, rēgnāvī, rēgnātūs
Brittanniae: Britain (nominative plural or genitive singular case)	rēgnūm: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēnum, rēgnī
Brond: father of Siggar	Sebald: a descendant of Brond
Catguollauni: of Catguollaunus, a king in Britain	sed: but
corruērunt: they fell, collapsed; 3rd person plural perfect active from corruo, correre, corrūi, corrutus	separāvit: he divided, separated; 3rd person singular perfect active from sēparō, sēparārē, sēparāvī, sēparātūs
cum: with	Sguerthing: a descendant of Soemil
dē: of, from, away from, down from	Siggar: a descendant of Brond
Deur: Deira, a region in Britain	sinistrālī: left, singular feminine ablative from sinistra, sinistrae
Deurōrum: of Deira, an early medieval kingdom around modern-day York	Soemil: a descendant of Brond
Dinguayrdi: Dinguayrdus (?) Guurth Berneich	sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
duo: two	tenuit: he held, he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from teneō, tenērē, tenui, tentus
duodecim: twelve	Ulli: a descendant of Soemil
Eadbyrth: a descendant of Eāta Glinmaur	Umbrī: possibly the Humber Estuary
Eadfrid: a descendant of Soemil	ūnus: one
Eadric: a descendant of Ida	ūnxit: he anointed; 3rd person singular perfect active from ungō, ungere, unxī, unctus
Eāta: Eāta Glinmaur, a descendant of Ida	Usfrean: a descendant of Soemil
Ecgbirth: a descendant of Eāta Glinmaur	Woden: a progenitor of kings in Britain
Ecgfrid: Ecgfrid Ailguin	Zegulf: a descendant of Brond
Ecgfrid: Ecgfrid Ailguin, a descendant of Osguid	
Ecgulf: a descendant of Ida	
Echun: a descendant of Ecgfrid Ailguin	
Edgum: a man who fell in the battle/war Meicen	
Eobba: a descendant of Ida	
eōrum: their; plural masc. or neuter. genitive	
episcopum: bishop; singular masculine accusative from episcopū, episcopi	
erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus	
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus	
et: and	
ēvāsit: he avoided, he escaped; 3rd person singular perfect active from ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūs	
exercitū: army; singular neuter ablative from exerceo, exercere, exercui, exercitus	
filī: sons; plural masculine nominative from filius, fili	
filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili	
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus	
genere: family, offspring; singular neuter ablative from genus, generis	
genuit: he begot; 3rd person singular perfect active from gignō, gignere, genuī, genitum	
Giulglis: a descendant of Soemil	
Glinmaur: Eāta Glinmaur, a descendant of Ida	
Guendotae: a region in Britain	
Guurth: Dinguayrdus (?) Guurth Berneich	
id: it	
Ida: father of Eadric	
Iffi: a descendant of Soemil	
illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud	
illō: these; singular masculine or neuter ablative from ille, illa, illud	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
interfecti: interfecti sunt = they were killed; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from interficiō, interficere, interfēci, interfectus	
ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum	
ipsō: he himself; singular masculine or neuter ablative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum	
istō: that; singular masculine or neuter ablative from iste, ista, istud	
iterātūm: iterātūm est = it was repeated; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from iterō, iterāre, iterāvī, iterātūs	
Liodguald: a descendant of Ida	
maris: sea; singular neuter genitive from mare, maris	
Meicen: name of a battle or war	
nātiōne: race, tribe, nation; singular feminine ablative from nātiō, nātiōnis	
nōn: not	
numquam: never	
omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne	
orīgine: origin; singular feminine ablative from orīgō, orīginis	
Osfird: a descendant of Soemil	
Osguid: father of Ecgfrid	

62 Tunc Dutigirn in illō tempore fortiter dīmicābat contrā gentem Anglōrum. Tunc Talhaern Tataguen in poēmate clāruit et Neirin, et Taliessin, et Bluchbard, et Cīan, quī vocātur Guenith Guaut, simul¹ ūnō tempore in poēmate Britannicō clāruērunt. Mailcunus magnus rēx apud Brittōnēs rēgnābat, id est in regiōne Guenedōtae, quia atavus illīus, id est Cunedag, cum filiīs suīs, quōrum numerus octo erat, vēnerat prius dē parte sinistrālī, id est dē regiōne quae vocātur Manau Guotodin, centum quadrāgintā sex annīs antequam Mailcun rēgnāret, et Scottōs cum ingentissimā clāde expulērunt ab istīs regiōnibus et nusquam reversī sunt iterum ad habitandum.

¹*At the same time they became famous in British poetry.*

ab: from, out of, by, since	sinistrālī: left (north?), singular feminine ablative from <i>sinistra</i> , <i>sinistrae</i>
ad: to, towards, at, according to	suis: their; plural dative or ablative of <i>suus</i>
Anglōrum: of the Anglos, Englishmen; plural masculine genitive from <i>Anglus</i> , <i>Angli</i>	Talhaern: <i>Talhaern Tataquen</i> , a British poet
annī: years; plural masculine ablative from <i>annus</i> , <i>annī</i>	Taliessin: <i>Taliessin</i> , a British poet
antequam: before	Tataquen: <i>Talhaern Tataquen</i> , a British poet
apud: at, by, near	tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from <i>tempus</i> , <i>temporis</i>
atavus: ancestor; singular masculine nominative from <i>atavus</i> , <i>atavī</i>	tunc: then
Bluchbard: a British poet	ūnō: one; singular masculine ablative from <i>ūnus</i> -a -um, <i>prīmus</i> -a -um, <i>singuli</i> -ae -a, <i>semel</i>
Brittanicō: Britannic (ablative case)	venerat: he had come; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from <i>veniō</i> , <i>venire</i> , <i>vēnī</i> , <i>ventus</i>
Brittōnē: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine accusative from <i>Brittō</i> , <i>Brittōnis</i>	vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from <i>vocō</i> , <i>vocāre</i> , <i>vocātus</i>
centum: hundred; from <i>centum</i> , <i>centesimus</i> -a -um, <i>centeni</i> -ae -a, <i>centie</i> (n)s	
Cian: Guenith Guaut, a British poet	
clāde: ruins, destruction, defeat; singular feminine ablative from <i>clādēs</i> , <i>clādis</i>	
clāruērunt: they became famous; 3rd person plural perfect active from <i>clārēscō</i> , <i>clārēscere</i> , <i>clārui</i> , -	
clāruit: he became famous; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>clārēscō</i> , <i>clārēscere</i> , <i>clārui</i> , -	
contrā: against, away from, facing	
cum: with	
Cunedag: Cunedda ap Edern, King of Gwynedd, an early Welsh leader who reigned circa AD 450-460. Cunedda is mentioned again in section 15.	
dē: of, from, away from, down from	
dīmicābat: he fought; 3rd person singular imperfect active from <i>dīmicō</i> , <i>dīmicāre</i> , <i>dīmicāvī</i> , <i>dīmicātus</i>	
Dutigirn: a king who fought against the Anglos	
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fui</i> , <i>futurus</i>	
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fui</i> , <i>futurus</i>	
et: and	
expulērunt: they expelled; 3rd person plural perfect active from <i>expellō</i> , <i>expellere</i> , <i>expulī</i> , <i>expulsus</i>	
filiūs: sons; plural masculine ablative from <i>filius</i> , <i>fili</i>	
fortiter: strongly (adverb from <i>fortis</i> , <i>forte</i>)	
gentem: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from <i>gēns</i> , <i>gentis</i>	
Guaut: Guenith Guaut, a British poet	
Guenedotae: a region in Britain	
Guenith: Guenith Guaut, a British poet	
Guotodin: Manau Guotodin, a region in Britain	
habitandum: living; singular neuter accusative gerund from <i>habitō</i> , <i>habitāre</i> , <i>habitāvī</i> , <i>habitātus</i>	
id: it	
illīus: of that; singular genitive from <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i>	
illō: that; neuter ablative from <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i>	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
ingentissimā: very large; singular feminine ablative from <i>ingēns</i> , <i>ingentis</i> (gen.), <i>ingentior</i> -or -us, <i>ingentissimus</i> -a -um	
istīs: those; plural dative or ablative from <i>iste</i> , <i>ista</i> , <i>istud</i>	
iterum: again	
māgnus: great; singular masculine nominative from <i>māgnus</i> , <i>māgna</i> -um, <i>mājor</i> -or -us, <i>maximus</i> -a -um	
Mailcun: Mailcun, a king	
Mailcunus: Mailcun, a king	
Manau: possibly the region near the Isle of Man, an island between Great Britain and Ireland.	
Neirin: Neirin, a British poet	
numerus: number; singular masculine nominative from <i>numerus</i> , <i>numerī</i>	
nusquam: nowhere	
octō: 8; from <i>octo</i> , <i>octavus</i> -a -um, <i>octoni</i> -ae -a, <i>octie</i> (n)s	
parte: part; singular feminine ablative from <i>pars</i> , <i>partis</i>	
poēmāte: poem; singular neuter ablative from <i>poēma</i> , <i>poēmatis</i>	
prius: before	
quadrāgintā: 40	
quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of <i>quis</i>	
qui: who; plural masculine nominative of <i>quis</i>	
quia: because	
quōrum: of whom; plural masc or neut. genitive of <i>quis</i>	
regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from <i>regiō</i> , <i>regiōnis</i>	
regiōnibus: regions; plural feminine ablative from <i>regiō</i> , <i>regiōnis</i>	
rēgnābat: he was reigning; 3rd person singular imperfect active from <i>rēgnō</i> , <i>rēgnāre</i> , <i>rēgnāvī</i> , <i>rēgnātus</i>	
rēgnāret: he reigned; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from <i>rēgnō</i> , <i>rēgnāre</i> , <i>rēgnāvī</i> , <i>rēgnātus</i>	
reversī: reversī sunt = they returned; plural masculine nominative perfect participle from <i>revertor</i> , <i>revertī</i> , <i>reversus</i>	
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from <i>rēx</i> , <i>rēgis</i>	
Scottōs: the Scots	
sex: six	
simul: at the same time as	

63 Addā filius Īdā rēgnāvit annīs octo. Aedlric filius Addā rēgnāvit quattuor annīs.

Deoric filius Īda rēgnāvit septem annīs. Friodolguald rēgnāvit sex annīs. In cuius tempore rēgnum Cantōrum mittente¹ Gregōriō baptismum suscēpit. Hussā rēgnāvit annīs septem: contrā illum quattuor rēgēs Urbgen et Riderchhen et Guallanc et Morcant dīmicāvērunt. Deodric contrā illum Urbgēn cum filiīs dīmicābat fortiter. In illō autem tempore aliquandō hostēs, nunc cīvēs vincēbantur et ipse conclūsit eōs tribus diēbus et noctibus in īsulā Metcaud et dum erat in expeditiōne, iugulātus est Morcantō dēstinante² prō invidiā, quia in ipsō prae omnibus rēgibus virtūs maxima erat īstaurātiōne bellī.

¹*In whose time the kingdom of Kent, by means of the sending of Gregory, undertook baptism.* This is referring to when Pope Gregory the Great (papacy AD 590-604) undertook a large-scale missions effort to convert the Anglo-Saxons.

²*He (Deodric) was killed by Morcant for the reason of envy, because in him, before all the kings, was the greatest ability for the renewal of war.* Morcant killed, or ordered the killing of, Deodric, because Deodric was the best military commander he was fighting against.

Addā: Adda, son of Ida
 Aedlric: a king
 aliquandō: some day
 annis: years; plural masculine ablative from *annus*, *annī*
 autem: but, however, moreover
 baptismum: baptism; singular neuter accusative from
 baptismus, *baptismī*
 bellī: of war; singular neuter genitive from *bellum*, *bellī*
 Cantorum: of Kent
 cīvēs: citizens; plural common nominative from *cīvis*, *cīvis*
 conclūsīt: he shut, confined, enclosed; 3rd person singular
 perfect active from *conclūdō*, *conclūdere*, *conclūsī*,
 conclūsus
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 cuius: whose; singular genitive from *quis*
 cum: with
 Deodric: fought against Urbgēn, possibly the same person as
 Deoric
 Deoric: a descendant of Ida, possibly the same person as
 Deodric
 dēstīnante: determining; singular ablative present participle
 from *dēstīnō*, *dēstīnāre*, *dēstīnāvi*, *dēstīnātus*
 diēbus: days; plural common ablative from *diēs*, *diēi*
 dīmīcābat: he fought; 3rd person singular imperfect active from
 dīmīcō, *dīmīcāre*, *dīmīcāvī*, *dīmīcātus*
 dīmīcāvērūnt: they fought; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 dīmīcō, *dīmīcāre*, *dīmīcāvī*, *dīmīcātus*
 dum: while, as long as, until
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from *is*, *ea*, *id*
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from *sum*,
 esse, *fui*, *futūrus*
 et: and
 expeditiōne: expedition, campaign; singular feminine ablative
 from *expeditiō*, *expeditiōnis*
 filiīs: sons; plural masculine ablative from *filius*, *filiī*
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from *filius*, *filiī*
 fortiter: strongly (adverb from *fortis*, *forte*)
 Friodolguald: a king
 Gregorīo: Pope Gregory the Great (papacy AC 590-604)
 (ablative case)
 Guallanc: one of the four kings who fought Hussa
 hostēs: enemies; plural common nominative from *hostis*, *hostis*
 Hussa: a king
 Ida: father of Adda
 illo: these; singular masculine or neuter ablative from *ille*, *illa*,
 illud
 illum: that; singular feminine accusative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 īstauratiōne: renewal, repetition; singular feminine ablative
 from *īstaurātiō*, *īstaurātiōnis*
 īsulā: island; singular feminine ablative from *īsula*, *īsulae*
 invidiā: envy, spite; singular feminine nominative from *invidia*,
 invidiae
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from *ipse*, *ipsa*,
 ipsum
 ipsō: he himself; singular neuter ablative from *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*
 iugulātus: iugulātus est = he was killed; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from *iugulō*, *iugulāre*,
 iugulāvī, *iugulātus*
 maxima: biggest; singular feminine nominative from *māgnus*,
 māgna -um, *major* -or -us, *maximus* -a -um
 Metcaud: an island
 mittente: sending; singular ablative present participle from
 mittō, *mittere*, *misi*, *missus*
 Morcant: one of the four kings who fought Hussa
 Morcantō: one of the four kings who fought Hussa (ablative
 case)
 noctibus: nights; plural feminine ablative from *nox*, *noctis*
 nunc: now
 octō: 8; from *octo*, *octavus* -a -um, *octoni* -ae -a, *octie* (n)s
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from *omnis*, *omnis*, *omne*
 prae: before, in front, because of
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 quattuor: 4
 quia: because
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from
 rēx, *rēgis*
 rēgibus: kings; plural masculine ablative from *rēx*, *rēgis*
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 rēgnō, *rēgnāre*, *rēgnāvī*, *rēgnātus*
 rēgnūm: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from *rēgnūm*,
 rēgni
 Riderchhen: one of the four kings who fought Hussa
 septem: seven
 sex: six
 suscepit: he undertook, he received; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from *suscipiō*, *suscipere*, *suscēpī*, *suscepitus*
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from *tempus*,
 temporis

tribus: three; plural ablative from *trēs* -es -ia, *tertius* -a -um,
 terti -ae -a, *ter*

Urbgen: one of the four kings who fought Hussa
 vincēbantur: they were conquered; 3rd person plural imperfect
 passive from *vincō*, *vincere*, *vici*, *victus*
 virtūs: virtue, manliness, power; singular feminine nominative
 from *virtūs*, *virtūtis*

Eadfered Flesaurs rēgnāvit duodecim annīs in Berneich et aliōs duodecim in Deur, vīgintī quattuor annīs inter duo rēgna rēgnāvit et dedit uxōrī¹ suae Dinguoaroy, quae vocātur Bebbab, et dē nōmine suae accēpit nōmen, id est Bebbanburth. Eoguin filius Allī rēgnāvit annīs decem et septem et ipse occupāvit Elmet et expulit Certic rēgem illīus regiōnīs.

Eanfled filia illīus duodecimō diē post pentēcostēn baptismum accēpit cum ūniversīs hominibus suīs dē virīs et mulieribus cum eā. Eadgum vērō in sequentī Paschā baptismum suscēpit et duodecim mīllia hominum baptīzātī sunt cum eō. Sī quis scīre voluerit, quis eōs baptīzāvit, Rum map Urbgēn baptīzāvit eōs et per quadrāgintā diēs nōn cessāvit baptīzāre omne genus ambrōnum et praedicātiōnem illīus multī crēdidērunt Christō.

¹And he gave to his wife, who is called Bebbab, Dinguoaroy and from her name it tooks its name, which is Bebbanburth.

accēpit: he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 acciō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 aliōs: others; plural masculine accusative from alius, alia, aliud
 Allī: father of Eoguin
 ambrōnum: of the barbarians; plural masculine genitive from
 ambro, ambronis
 annīs: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī
 baptīsum: baptism; singular masculine accusative from
 baptīmus, baptīmī
 baptīzāre: to baptize; present infinitive from baptīzō, baptīzāre,
 baptīzāvī, baptīzātūs
 baptīzātī: baptīzātī sunt = they were baptized; plural masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from baptīzō,
 baptīzāre, baptīzāvī, baptīzātūs
 baptīzāvit: he baptized; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 baptīzō, baptīzāre, baptīzāvī, baptīzātūs
 Bebbab: Bebbab, wife of Eadferd Flesaurs
 Bebbanburth: a place named after Bebbab
 Berneich: Bernicia, a region in Britain
 Certic: a king
 cessāvit: he ceased; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 cessō, cessāre, cessāvī, cessātūs
 Christō: Christ
 crēdīdērunt: they believed; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from credo, credere, credidi, creditus
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 decem: ten
 dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dō, dare, voluerit; he will have wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active
 dedi, datus
 Deur: Deira, a region in Britain
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēī
 diēs: days; plural common nominative from diēs, diēī
 Dinguoaroy: a place later named after Bebbab
 duo: two
 duodecim: twelve
 duodecimō: twelfth (ablative of duodecim)
 eā: with her; singular feminine ablative from is, ea, id
 Eadferd: Eadferd Flesaurs, a king
 Eadgum: someone who was baptized with many others
 Eanfled: someone who was baptized with many others
 Elmet: a place that Eoguin occupied
 eō: with him; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
 Eoguin: son of Allī
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fūi, futūrus
 et: and
 expulit: he drove out, expelled; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus
 filia: daughter; singular feminine nominative from filia, filiae
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 Flesaurs: Eadferd Flesaurs, a king
 genus: race, nation; singular neuter accusative from genus,
 generis
 hominibus: persons, men; plural masculine ablative from homō,
 hominis
 hominum: of persons, of men; plural masculine genitive from
 homō, hominis
 id: it
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inter: between, among, during
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 map: son, in Old Welsh; Rum map Urbgēn = Rum, son of
 Urbgēn
 mīllia: thousands; plural neuter nominative from mille, millis
 mulieribus: women; plural feminine ablative from mulier,
 mulieris
 multī: many; plural masculine nominative from multus, multa
 -um, -a, plūrimus -a -um
 nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 nō: not
 occupāvit: he seized, attacked; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from occupo, occupare, occupavi, occupatus
 omne: all, every; singular neuter accusative from omnis, omnis,
 omne
 Paschā: Passover, Easter; singular feminine ablative from
 Pascha, Paschae
 Pentēcostēn: Pentecost; singular feminine accusative from
 Pentecoste, Pentecostes
 per: through
 post: behind, after, since
 praedicationēm: public proclamation, preaching; singular
 feminine accusative from praedicatiō, praedicatiōnis
 quadrāginta: 40
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis

64 Oswald filius Eadfered rēgnāvit novem annīs: ipse est Oswald Lamnguin. Ipse occīdit Catgublaun rēgem Guenedōtae regiōnis in bellō Catscaul cum magnā clāde exercitūs suī. Osguid filius Eadlfrid rēgnāvit vīgintī octo annīs et sex mēnsibus. Dum ipse rēgnābat, venit mortālitās hominum Catgualart rēgnante apud Brittōnēs post patrem suum et in eā periit. Et ipse occīdit Pantha in campō Gāī et nunc facta est strāgēs Gāī campī et rēgēs Brittōnum interfectī sunt, quī exierant cum rēge Pantha in expeditiōne usque ad urbem, quae vocātur Iudeu.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 annis: years; plural masculine ablative from *annus*, *annī*
 apud: at, by, near
 bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from *bellum*, *bellī*
 Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine
 accusative from *Brittō*, *Brittōnis*
 Brittōnum: of the Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural
 masculine genitive from *Brittō*, *Brittōnis*
 campī: fields; singular masculine genitive from *campus*, *campī*
 campō: field; singular masculine ablative from *campus*, *campī*
 Catgualart: a king
 Catgublaun: a king
 Catscaul: the name of a war or battle
 clāde: ruins, destruction, defeat; singular feminine ablative from
 clādēs, clādis
 cum: with
 dum: while, as long as, until
 eā: it; singular feminine ablative from *is*, *ea*, *id*
 Eadfered: father of Oswald
 Eadlfrid: father of Osguid
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fuī, *futūrus*
 et: and
 exercitus: army; singular masculine genitive from *exercitus*,
 exercitūs
 exierant: they had gone out; 3rd person plural pluperfect active
 from *exeō*, *exire*, *exī*, *exitus*
 expeditionē: expedition, campaign; singular feminine ablative
 from *expeditiō*, *expeditionis*
 facta: facta est = it was made; singular feminine nominative
 perfect passive participle from *faciō*, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factus*
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from *filius*, *fili*
 Gāl: a field
 Guenedotae: a region, like Gwynedd
 hominum: of persons, of men; plural masculine genitive from
 homō, *hominis*
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 interficti: interficti sunt = they were killed; plural masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from *interficiō*,
 interficere, *interfēcī*, *interfactus*
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from *ipse*, *ipsa*,
 ipsum
 Iudeu: the name of a city
 Lamnguin: Oswald Lamnguin, a king
 māgnā: large; singular feminine ablative from *māgnus*, *māgna*
 -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mēnsibus: months; plural masculine ablative from *mēnsis*,
 mēnsis
 mortālitās: mortality; singular feminine nominative from
 mortālitās, *mortālitātis*
 novem: nine; from *novem*, *nonus* -a -um, *noveni* -ae -a, *novie* (n)s
 nunc: now
 occidit: he killed; 3rd person singular perfect from *occīdō*,
 occīdere, *occīdī*, *occīsus*
 octō: 8; from *octo*, *octavus* -a -um, *octoni* -ae -a, *octie* (n)s
 Osguid: the son of Eadlfrid
 Oswald: a king
 Pantha: a king
 patrem: father; singular masculine accusative from *pater*, *patris*
 perīvit: he perished; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 pereō, *perire*, *perīi*, *peritus*
 post: behind, after, since
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of *quis*
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of *quis*
 rēge: king; singular masculine ablative from *rēx*, *rēgis*
 rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from *rēx*, *rēgis*
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from
 rēx, *rēgis*
 regiōnis: regions; singular feminine genitive from *regiō*,
 regiōnis
 rēgnābat: he was reigning; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from *rēgnō*, *rēgnāre*, *rēgnāvī*, *rēgnātūs*
 rēgnante: reigning; singular ablative present participle from
 rēgnō, *rēgnāre*, *rēgnāvī*, *rēgnātūs*
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 rēgnō, *rēgnāre*, *rēgnāvī*, *rēgnātūs*
 sex: six
 strāgēs: destruction, overthrow; singular feminine nominative
 from *strāgēs*, *strāgis*
 suī: of him; singular or plural genitive of *se*
 suum: his; singular masculine accusative from *suus*, *sui*
 urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from *urbs*, *urbis*
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from *veniō*,
 venire, *vēnī*, *ventus*
 vīgīntī: 20
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, *vocāre*, *vocāvī*, *vocātūs*

65 Tunc reddidit Osguid omnēs dīvitiās, quae erant cum eō in urbe, usque in manū Pendae et Penda distribuit ea rēgibus Brittōnum, id est Atbret Iudeu. Sōlus autem Catgabail rēx Guenedōtae regiōnis cum exercitū suō ēvāsit dē nocte cōsurgēns, quāpropter vocātus est Catgabail Catguommed. Ecgfrid filius Osbiū rēgnāvit novem annīs. In tempore illīus sānctus Cudbert epīscopus obiit in īnsulā Medcaut. Ipse est quī fēcit bellum contrā Pictōs et corruit ibī.

Penda filius Pybba rēgnāvit decem annīs. Ipse prīmus sēparāvit rēgnum Merciōrum ā rēgnō Nordōrum et Onnan rēgem Easteranglōrum et sānctum Oswaldum rēgem Nordōrum occīdit per dolum. Ipse fēcit bellum Cocboy, in quō cecidit Eoua filius Pippa frāter eius rēx Merciōrum et Oswald rēx Nordōrum et ipse victor fuit per diabolicum artem. Nōn erat baptīzātus et numquam Deō crēdidi.

ā: from, out of, by, since	Osbiū: Osbiius, father of Ecgfrid
annīs: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī	Osguid: a king
artem: art, skill; singular feminine accusative from ars, artis	Oswald: king of Nords/Norse
Atbret: name of a region	Oswaldum: Saint Oswald of Northumbria (c.604-642)
autem: but, however, moreover	Penda: a king
baptizātus: having been baptized; singular masculine	Pendae: of Penda
nominative perfect passive participle from baptizō,	per: through
baptizāre, baptizāvī, baptizatus	Pictōs: Picts, a Scottish tribe;
bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative from bellum,	Pippa: father of Eoua
bellī	primus: first; singular masculine nominative from prīmus,
Brittōnum: of the Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural	prīma, prīmū
masculine genitive from Brittō, Brittonis	Pybba: father of Penda
Catgabail: king of Gwynedd	quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
Catguommed: a Welsh epithet for Catgabail, possible meaning	quāpropter: that's why
'battle-leader'	qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
cecidit: he fell; 3rd person singular perfect active from cadō,	quō: what; singular ablative of quis
cadere, cecidī, cāsus	reddidit: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
Cocboy: the name of a war or battle	reddō, reddere, reddidi, redditus
cōnsurgēns: standing up, rising; singular nominative present	rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
participle from cōnsurgō, cōsurgere, cōnsurrēxi,	rēgibus: kings; plural masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
cōsurrēctus	rēgiōnis: regions; singular feminine genitive from regiō,
contrā: against, away from, facing	regiōnis
corruit: he fell, collapsed; 3rd person singular present active	rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
from corrūō, corrūere, corrūi, corrūtus	rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātūs
crēdedit: he believed; 3rd person singular perfect active from	rēgnō: kingdom; singular neuter ablative from rēgnūm, rēgnī
credo, credere, credidi, creditus	rēgnūm: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēgnūm,
Cudbert: Saint Cuthbert of Lindisfarne (c. 634-687)	rēgnī
cum: with	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
dē: of, from, away from, down from	sānctum: holy, saint
decem: ten	sānctus: holy, saint
Deō: god; singular masculine dative from Deus, Dei	sēparāvit: he divided, separated; 3rd person singular perfect
diabolicum: diabolic, devilish; singular neuter nominative from	active from sēparō, sēparāre, sēparāvī, sēparātūs
diabolicus, diabolica, diabolicum	sōlus: alone; singular masculine nominative from sōlus, sōla,
distribuit: he distributed; 3rd person singular present active	sōlūm (gen -ius)
from distribuō, distribuere, distribui, distribūtus	suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
dīvītiās: riches, wealth; plural feminine accusative from dīvitia,	tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus,
dīvitiae	temporis
dolum: trickery, deception; singular masculine accusative from	tunc: then
dolus, dolī	urbe: city; singular feminine ablative from urbs, urbis
ea: it; plural neuter or accusative from is, ea, id	ūsque: until, all the way, up until
Easteranglorum: of East Anglia	victor: victor; singular masculine nominative from victor,
Ecgfrid: a king	victōris
eiūs: his/her/its	vocātūs: vocātūs est = it was called; singular masculine
eō: with him; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id	nominative perfect passive participle from vocō, vocāre,
Eoua: son of Pippa	vocāvī, vocātūs
episcopus: overseer, bishop; singular masculine nominative	
from episcopus, episcopi	
erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum,	
esse, fūi, futūrus	
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,	
esse, fūi, futūrus	
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,	
fūi, futūrus	
et: and	
ēvāsit: he avoided, he escaped; 3rd person singular perfect	
active from ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūs	
exercitu: army; singular neuter ablative from exercitus,	
exercitūs	
fēcit: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō,	
facere, fēcī, factus	
filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, filī	
frāter: brother; singular masculine nominative from frāter,	
frātris	
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse,	
fūi, futūrus	
Guenedotae: of Gwynedd	
ibi: there, then	
id: it	
illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
īsulā: island; singular feminine ablative from īsula, īsulāe	
ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,	
ipsum	
Iudeu: name of a region	
manū: hand; singular feminine ablative from manus, manūs	
Medcaut: Inner Farne Island, where Saint Cuthbert died in 687	
Merciōrum: of Mercia	
nocte: night; singular feminine ablative from nox, noctis	
nōn: not	
Nordorum: of the Nords/Norse	
novem: nine; from novem, nonus -a -um, noveni -ae -a, novie (n)s	
numquam: never	
obiit: he died; die; 3rd person singular perfect active from oboeo,	
obire, obiī, obitus	
occidit: he killed; 3rd person singular perfect from occīdō,	
occidere, occidi, occisus	
omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis,	
omne	
Onnan: Onna, king of East Anglia	

66 A mundi principiō usque ad Constantīnum et Rūfum quīnque mīlia sexcentī quīnquāgintā octo anni reperiuntur. Item a duōbus Geminīs Rūfō et Rubelīō usque in Stillitionem cōsulem trecentī septuāgintā trēs anni sunt. Item a Stillitione usque ad Valentīniānum filium Placidae et rēgnum Guorthigirnī vīgintī octo anni.

Et a rēgnō Guorthigirnī usque ad discordiam Guitolīnī et Ambrosiī anni sunt duodecim, quod est Guoloppum; id est Catguoloph. Guorthigirnus autem tenuit imperium in Brittanniā Theodosiō et Valentīniānō cōsulibus et in quārtō annō rēgnī suī Saxonēs ad Brittanniam vēnērunt Fēlice et Taurō cōsulibus quadringentēsimō annō ab incarnātiōne dominī nostrī Iēsu Chrīstī.

Ab annō, quō Saxonēs vēnērunt in Brittanniam et a Guorthigirnō suscepti sunt, usque ad Decium et Valeriānum anni sunt sexāgintā novem.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Ambrosiī: Ambrosius
 anni: years; plural masculine nominative from *annus*, *annī*
 anno: year; singular masculine ablative from *annus*, *annī*
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Brittanniā: in Britain (ablative case)
 Brittanniī: Britain (accusative case)
 Catguoloph: possibly another name for Guoloppum
 Christi: of Christ; singular masculine genitive from *Chrīstus*, *Chrīsti*
 Constantiū: Constantine; (Emperor Constantine I 306-337; II 337-340; III 407-411); singular masculine accusative from *Constantinus*, *Constantini*
 cōsulem: consul; singular masculine accusative from *cōsul*, *cōsulis*
 cōsulibus: consuls; plural masculine ablative from *cōsul*, *cōsulis*
 Deciū: Decius, Roman emperor from AD 249-251
 discordiā: discord, disagreement; singular feminine accusative *vēnērunt*: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from *discordia*, *discordiae*
 Domini: of the Lord; singular masculine genitive from *dominus*, *vīgintī*: 20
 duōbus: two; plural masculine ablative from *duo* -ae o, secundus -a -um, *bīni* -ae -a, bis
 duodecim: twelve
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*
 et: and
 Félice: Flavius Felix, Roman consul in 428 alongside Flavius Taurus
 filiū: son; singular masculine accusative from *filius*, *filiī*
 gemini: twins; plural ablative from *geminus*, *gemina*, *geminum*
 Guitoliniī: Guitolitus
 Guoloppum: probably the name for the event of discord between Guitolitus and Ambrosius
 Guorthigirnī: of Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (genitive case)
 Guorthigirno: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (dative or ablative case)
 Guorthigirnus: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (nominative case)
 id: it
 Iēsū: Jesus, genitive singular of *Iēsūs*
 imperiū: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter accusative from *imperium*, *imperii*
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 incarnatiōne: incarnation; singular feminine ablative from *incarnatiō*, *incarnatiōnis*
 item: just like
 mīlia: one thousand
 mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from *mundus*, *mundī*
 nostrī: our; sing. masc. gen. or pl. masc. nom. or sing. neut. gen. of *noster*
 novem: nine; from *novem*, *nonus* -a -um, *noveni* -ae -a, *novie* (n)s
 octō: 8; from *octo*, *octavus* -a -um, *octoni* -ae -a, *octie* (n)s
 Placidae: Galla Placidia (c.392-450), daughter of Theodosius I, father of Valentinian III
 prīncipiō: beginning, origin; singular neuter ablative from *principium*, *principi(i)*
 quadrūgentēsimō: 400
 quartō: fourth; singular masculine ablative from *quattuor*, *quartus* -a -um, *quaterni* -ae -a, -
 quīnquāgintā: fifty
 quīnque: five
 quō: what; singular ablative of *quis*
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of *qui*
 rēgnī: of the kingdom; singular neuter genitive from *rēgnum*, *rēgnī*
 rēgnō: kingdom; singular neuter ablative from *rēgnum*, *rēgnī*
 rēgnū: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from *rēgnum*, *rēgnī*
 reperiuntur: they are discovered; 3rd person plural present passive from *reperiō*, *reperire*, *reperi*, *repertus*
 Rubelio: Rubelius
 Rūfō: Rufus (ablative case)
 Rūfum: Rufus (accusative case)
 Saxonēs: The Saxons
 septuāgintā: 70
 sexāgintā: sixty
 Stillitio: possibly Stilicho (c. 359-408), a military commander in the Roman army
 Stillitionem: possibly Stilicho (c. 359-408), a military commander in the Roman army
 suī: of him; singular or plural genitive of *se*
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*
 suscepti: suscepti sunt = were received; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from *suscipiō*, *suscipere*, *suscēpī*, *susceptus*
 Taurō: Flavius Taurus, Roman consul 428 AD alongside Flavius

VI. Cīvitātēs Brittanniae

66a Haec sunt nōmina omnium cīvitātum, quae sunt in tōtā Brittanniā, quārum numerus est 28.

1. Cair Guorthigirn.	15. Cair Peris.
2. Cair Guinntguic.	16. Cair Daun.
3. Cair Mincip.	17. Cair Legion.
4. Cair Ligualid.	18. Cair Guricon.
5. Cair Meguaid.	19. Cair Segeint.
6. Cair Colun.	20. Cair Legeion Guar Usic.
7. Cair Ebrauc.	21. Cair Guent.
8. Cair Custoeint.	22. Cair Brithon.
9. Cair Caratauc.	23. Cair Lerion.
10. Cair Grauth.	24. Cair Draitou.
11. Cair Maunguid.	25. Cair Pensa vel Coyt.
12. Cair Lundem.	26. Cair Urnarc.
13. Cair Ceint.	27. Cair Celemion.
14. Cair Guiragon.	28. Cair Luit Coyt.

ā: from, out of, by, since
Britthon: Cair Brithon, 'Fort of the Britons', Dumbarton in
Strathclyde
Brittanniā: in Britain
Brittanniae: Britain (nominative plural or genitive singular case)
Cair: fort in Welsh
Caratauc: Cair Caratauc, 'Fort Rampart', perhaps Salisbury
Ceint: Cair Ceint, 'Fort Kent', Canterbury
Celemion: Cair Celemion, perhaps Camlaet
civitātēs: cities; plural feminine nominative from cīvitās,
cīvitātis
civitātum: of cities; plural feminine genitive from cīvitās,
cīvitātis
Colun: Cair Colun, 'Fort Colonia', perhaps Colchester
Coyt: Cair Luit Coyt
Custoeint: Cair Custoeint, 'Fort Constantius (or Constantine)',
perhaps Caernarfon
Daun: Cair Daun, 'Fort Don', Doncaster
Draitou: Cair Draitou, perhaps Drayton
Ebrauc: Cair Ebrauc, 'Fort York', York
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
fūi, futūrus
Grauth: Cair Grauth, 'Fort Granta', Cambridge
Guar: Cair Legeion Guar Usic
Guent: Cair Guent, 'Fort Venta', perhaps Caerwent or
Winchester
Guinntguic: Cair Guinntguic, 'Fort Venta', perhaps Winchester
Guiragon: Cair Guiragon, 'Fort Weorgoran', Worcester
Guorthigirn: Cair Guorthigirn, 'Fort Vortigern', perhaps
Carmarthen
Guricon: Cair Guricon, perhaps Warwick
haec: these; plural neuter nominative of hic, haec, hoc
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
Legeion: Cair Legeion Guar Usic, 'Fort Legion on the Usk',
Caerleon-upon-Usk
Legion: Cair Legion, 'Fort Legion', Chester
Lerion: Cair Leir, 'Fort Leir', Leicester
Ligualid: Cair Ligualid, 'Fort Luguwalos', Carlisle
Luit: Cair Luit Coyt
Lundem: Cair Lundem, 'Fort Londinium', London
Maunguid: Cair Maunguid, Manchester
Meguaid: Cair Meguaid, 'Fort Mediolanum', perhaps Meifod
Mincip: Cair Mincip, 'Fort Municipium', St. Albans
nōmina: names; plural neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
numerus: number; singular masculine nominative from
numerus, numerī
omnium: of all; plural genitive from omnis, omnis, omne
Pensa: Cair Pensa vel Coyt: 'Fort Penselwood', perhaps Exeter
Peris: Cair Peris, perhaps Portchester
quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
quārum: what; plural female genitive from qui
Segeint: Cair Segeint, 'Fort Seiont', perhaps Caernarfon
sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse,
fūi, futūrus
tōtā: whole, total; singular feminine ablative from tōtus, tōta,
tōtum (gen -ius)
Urnarc: Cair Urnarc, perhaps Wroxeter
Usic: Cair Legeion Guar Usic
vel: or
VI: 6 as a Roman numeral

VII. Dē Mīrābilibus Brittanniae

67 Prīnum mīrāculum est stāgnū Lumonoy. In eō sunt īinsulae sexāgintā et ibī habitant hominēs et sexāgintā rūpibus ambitur et nīdus aquilae in ūnāquāque rūpe est et flūmina fluunt sexāgintā in eō et nōn vādit ex eō ad mare nisi ūnum flūmen, quod vocātur Lemn.

Secundum mīrāculum ūstium Trahannōnī flūminis, quia in ūnā undā īinstar montis ad sissam tegit lītora et recēdit ut cētera maria.

Tertium mīrāculum stāgnū calidū, quod est in regiōne Huich et mūrō ambitur ex latere et lapide factō et in eō vādunt hominēs per omne tempus ad lavandum et ūnīcuique, sīcut placuerit illī, lavācrum sīc fiat sibi secundum voluntātem suam: sī voluerit, lavācrum frīgidū erit, sī calidū, calidū erit.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 ambitur: it is incircled; 3rd person singular present passive
 from ambiō, ambire, ambivī, ambitus
 aquilae: eagle; singular feminine genitive from aquila, aquilae
 Brittanniae: of Britain (genitive singular case)
 calidum: hot, warm; singular neuter nominative from calidus,
 calida -um, calidior -or -us, calidissimus -a -um
 cetera: the other; plural neuter nominative from ceterus, cetera,
 ceterum
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 eō: in it; singular neuter ablative from is, ea, id
 erit: he will be; 3rd person singular future active from sum,
 esse, fuī, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 ex: out of, from
 factō: made; singular masculine dative perfect passive participle
 from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 fiat: it happens, it is; 3rd person singular present active
 subjunctive from fiō, fierī, factus sum
 flūmen: river; singular neuter nominative from flūmen, flūminis
 flūmina: rivers; plural neuter nominative from flūmen, flūminis
 flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from flūmen, flūminis
 flūnt: they flow; 3rd person plural present active from flūo,
 fluere, flūxi, flūxus
 frigidum: cold; singular neuter nominative from frigidus, frigida
 -um, frigidior -or -us, frigidissimus -a -um
 habitant: they inhabit; 3rd person plural present active from
 habitō, habitare, habitavī, habitatūs
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from homō,
 hominis
 Huich: probably Hwicce, an Anglo-Saxon kingdom. The hot
 springs mentioned are possibly in Bath, Somerset. Bath has
 baths built by the Romans.
 ibī: there, then
 illi: to that one; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 instar: as big as
 īsulae: islands; plural feminine nominative from īsula, īsulae
 lapide: stone; singular masculine ablative from lapis, lapidis
 latere: brick; singular masculine ablative from later, lateris
 lavācrum: bath; singular neuter nominative from lavācrum,
 lavācrī
 lavandum: washing; singular neuter accusative gerund from
 lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautus
 Lemn: probably River Leven, the main outflow of Loch Lomond
 litora: beaches, shores; plural neuter accusative from lītus,
 litoris
 Lumanoy: probably Loch Lomond in Scotland
 mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris
 maria: seas; plural neuter nominative from mare, maris
 mirābilis: miracles; plural ablative from mirābilis, mirābilis,
 mirābile
 mirāculum: miracle; singular neuter nominative from
 mirāculum, mirāculi
 montis: mountains; singular masculine genitive from mōns,
 montis
 mūrō: city wall; singular masculine ablative from mūrus, mūrī
 nīdus: nest; singular masculine nominative from nīdus, nīdi
 nīsī: if not, unless
 nōn: not
 omne: all, every; singular neuter accusative from omnis, omnis,
 omne
 ōstium: door; singular neuter nominative from ōstium, ōstī
 per: through
 placuerit: it will have pleased; 3rd person singular perfect
 active subjunctive from placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus
 prīmū: first; singular neuter nominative from prīmus, prīma,
 prīmū
 quā: what; singular female ablative of qui
 quia: because
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 recēdit: it recedes; 3rd person singular present active from
 recēdō, recēdere, recessi, recessus
 regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 rūpe: cliff; singular feminine ablative from rūpēs, rūpis
 rūpibus: cliffs; plural feminine ablative from rūpēs, rūpis
 secundum: second, following, behind
 sexāgintā: sixty
 sī: if
 sibi: to himself; singular dative of se
 sīc: thus
 sicut: as, same as, like
 sissam: rocky shore (?), this was not in any dictionary I
 consulted
 stagnum: swamp, pool; singular neuter nominative from
 stagnum, stagnī
 suam: her; singular feminine acc. from suus

sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 tegit: it covers, hides; 3rd person singular present active from
 tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctus
 tempus: time, period; singular neuter accusative from tempus,
 temporis
 tertium: third; singular neuter nominative from trēs -es -ia,
 tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 Trahannōni: a river
 ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a
 -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 undā: waves; singular feminine ablative from unda, undae
 ūnāquāque: each one; ablative from ūnusquisque
 ūnum: one; singular neuter nominative from ūnus -a -um,
 prīmus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ut: so that
 vādīt: he goes; 3rd person singular present active from vādō,
 vādere, vāsi, -
 vādunt: they go; 3rd person plural present active from vādō,
 vādere, vāsi, -
 VII: seven
 vocātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātus
 voluerit: he will have wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active
 subjunctive from volō, velle, voluī, -
 voluntātem: will; singular feminine accusative from voluntās,
 voluntātis

68 Quārtum mīrāculum est: fontēs in eadem inveniuntur dē salō, ā quibus fontibus sāl coquitur: inde dīversa cibāria saliuntur et nōn prope sunt marī, sed dē terrā ēmergunt.

Aliud mīrāculum et Duorig Habren, id est duo¹ rēgēs Sabrīnae. Quandō inundantur mare ad sissam in ōstium Sabrīnae, duo cumulī spūmārum congregantur sēparātim et bellum faciunt inter sē in modum arietum et prōcēdit ūnusquisque ad alterum et collīdunt sē ad invicem et iterum sēcēdit alter ab alterō et iterum prōcēdunt in ūnāquāque sissā. Hoc faciunt ab initiō mundī usque in hodiernum diem.

¹*That is, two kings of the River Severn.* The 'two kings' are the two waves that 'battle' each other in the river.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*
 alter: the other; singular masculine nominative from *alter*,
 altera, *alterum*
 alterō: the other; singular masculine ablative from *alter*, *altera*,
 alterum
 alterum: the other; singular neuter nominative from *alter*,
 altera, *alterum*
 arietum: of rams; plural masculine genitive from *ariēs*, *arietis*
 bellum: battle, war; singular neuter accusative from *bellum*,
 belli
 cibāria: food; plural neuter nominative from *cibarium*, *cibarī*
 collidunt: they collide; 3rd person plural present active from
 collidō, *collidere*, *collisi*, *collitus*
 congregantur: they are gathered; 3rd person plural present
 passive from *congregō*, *congregāre*, *congregāvi*,
 congregātus
 coquitur: it is cooked; 3rd person singular present passive from
 coquo, *coquere*, *coxi*, *coccus*
 cumuli: heaps, piles; plural masculine nominative from *cumulus*,
 cumuli
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 diem: day; singular common accusative from *diēs*, *diēi*
 dīversa: diverse; plural neuter nominative from *diversus*,
 diversa, *diversum*
 duo: two
 eadem: the same (place), plural neuter accusative from *īdem*,
 eadem, *īdem*
 ēmergunt: they emerge, appear; 3rd person plural present
 active from *ēmergō*, *ēmergere*, *ēmersi*, *ēmersus*
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fuī, *futūrus*
 et: and
 faciunt: they are making, they are doing; 3rd person plural
 present active from *faciō*, *facere*, *fēci*, *factus*
 fontēs: fountains; plural masculine nominative from *fōns*, *fontis*
 fontibus: fountains; plural masculine ablative from *fōns*, *fontis*
 hoc: this; singular neuter nominative of *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*
 hodiernum: today; singular neuter accusative from *hodiernus*,
 hodierna, *hodiernum*
 id: it
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inde: from there, since
 initīō: beginning, entrance; singular neuter ablative from
 initium, *initi*
 inter: between, among, during
 inundantur: they are flooded; 3rd person plural present passive
 from *inundō*, *inundāre*, *inundāvī*, *inundātus*
 inveniuntur: they are discovered; 3rd person plural present
 passive from *invenio*, *invenire*, *inveni*, *inventus*
 invicem: alternately, mutually
 iterum: again
 mare: sea; singular neuter nominative from *mare*, *maris*
 marī: sea; singular neuter ablative from *mare*, *maris*
 mīrāculum: miracle; singular neuter nominative from
 mīrāculum, *mīrāculi*
 modum: way, manner, mode; singular masculine accusative from
 modus, *modi*
 mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from *mundus*, *mundī*
 nōn: not
 ōstium: door; singular neuter nominative from *ōstium*, *ōstī*
 procēdit: he proceeds; 3rd person singular present active from
 procēdō, *procēdere*, *processī*, *processus*
 procedunt: they proceed; 3rd person plural present active from
 procēdō, *procēdere*, *processī*, *processus*
 prope: near, close
 quā: what; singular female ablative of *qui*
 quando: when, because
 quārtum: for the fourth time
 quibus: what; plural ablative of *qui*
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from
 rēx, *rēgis*
 sāl: salt; singular masculine nominative from *sāl*, *salis*
 salō: high sea; singular neuter ablative from *salum*, *salī*
 se: himself
 sēcēdit: it withdraws; 3rd person singular present active from
 sēcēdō, *sēcēdere*, *sēcessī*, *sēcessus*
 sed: but
 sēparātim: separately, apart
 spūmārum: of foam; plural feminine genitive from *spūma*,
 spūmae
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fuī, *futūrus*
 terra: land; singular feminine nominative from *terra*, *terrae*
 Duorig: Dourig Habren, Welsh name for a phenomenon where
 two waves collide in a certain river
 Habren: Dourig Habren, Welsh name for a phenomenon where

two waves collide in a certain river
 Sabrinae: the River Severn, the longest river in Britain.
 Sabrinae is probably in the nominative case here.
 sissa: rocky shore (?), this was not in any dictionary I consulted
 sissam: rocky shore (?), this was not in any dictionary I
 consulted
 ūnusquisque: each one
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until

69 Aliud mīrāculum est, id est Oper Līnn Liuān. Ōstium flūminis illīus fluit in Sabrīnā et quandō Sabrīna inundātur ad sissam, et mare inundātur similiter in ūstiō suprā dictī flūminis et in stāgnō ūstiī recepitur in modum vorāginis et mare nōn vādit sūrsum et est lītus iuxtā flūmen et quamdiū Sabrīna inundātur ad sissam, istud lītus nōn tegitur et quandō recēdit mare et Sabrīna, tunc stāgnūm Liuān ēructat omne quod dēvorāvit dē marī et lītus istud tegitur et īstar montis in ūnā undā ēructat et rumpit. Et sī fuerit exercitus tōtīus regiōnis, in quā est, et dīrēxerit faciem contrā undam, et exercitum¹ trahit undā per vim hūmōre replētīs vestibus et equī similiter trahuntur. Sī autem exercitus terga versūs fuerit contrā eam, nōn nocet² eī undā et quandō recesserit mare, tōtum tunc lītus, quod undā tegit, retrō dēnūdātur et mare recēdit ab ipsō.

¹And the wave drags the army through the strength of the liquid, drenching their clothes, and the horses are similarly dragged. This refers to a natural phenomenon known as a tidal bore, and still occurs today in the River Severn. Videos can be found online of surfers riding a 3-foot wave produced by this tidal bore in the River Severn.

²The wave does not hurt it (the army). Nocēre takes the dative instead of the accusative.

ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*
 autem: but, however, moreover
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dēnūdātūr: it is uncovered; 3rd person singular present passive
 from *dēnūdō*, *dēnūdārē*, *dēnūdāvī*, *dēnūdātūs*
 dēvorātī: it devoured; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 dēvorō, *dēvorārē*, *dēvorāvī*, *dēvorātūs*
 dictū: suprā dictū = the above said; singular masculine genitive
 perfect passive participle from *dico*, *dicere*, *dixī*, *dictus*
 dīrēxītī: it will have aligned, directed; 3rd person singular
 perfect active subjunctive from *dirigō*, *dirigere*, *dīrēxī*,
 dīrēctus
 eam: it; singular feminine accusative from *is*, *ea*, *id*
 eī: to him, her, or it; singular dative from *is*, *ea*, *id*
 equi: horse; plural masculine nominative from *equus*, *equī*
 érūctat: it erupts, vomits; 3rd person singular present active
 from *éructō*, *érūctārē*, *érūctāvī*, *érūctātūs*
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fuī, *futūrus*
 et: and
 exercitū: army; singular masculine accusative from *exercitus*,
 exercitūs
 exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from *exercitus*,
 exercitūs
 faciem: face; singular feminine accusative from *facies*, *faciēi*
 fluit: it flows; 3rd person singular present active from *fluō*,
 fluere, *flūxi*, *flūxus*
 flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from *flūmen*, *flūminis*
 flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from *flūmen*, *flūminis*
 fuerit: it will have been; 3rd person singular perfect active
 subjunctive from *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*
 hūmōre: liquid; singular masculine ablative from *hūmor*,
 hūmōris
 id: it
 illius: of that; singular genitive from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 īstar: as big as
 inundatūr: it is flooded; 3rd person singular present passive
 from *inundō*, *inundārē*, *inundāvī*, *inundātūs*
 ipsō: itself; singular masculine or neuter ablative from *ipse*,
 ipsa, *ipsum*
 istud: that; singular neuter nominative and accusative from
 iste, *ista*, *istud*
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 Linn: Oper Linn Liuān, likely 'Mouth of the pool of Liuān'
 lītūs: beach, shore; singular neuter nominative or accusative
 from *lītūs*, *lītoris*
 Liuan: Oper Linn Liuān, likely 'Mouth of the pool of Liuān'
 mare: sea; singular neuter nominative from *mare*, *maris*
 mari: sea; singular neuter from *mare*, *maris*
 mīrāculūm: miracle; singular neuter nominative from
 mīrāculūm, *mīrāculi*
 modūm: mode, manner, way, measure, size; singular masculine
 accusative from *modus*, *modī*
 montis: mountains; singular masculine genitive from *mōns*,
 montis
 nocet: it harms; 3rd person singular present active from *noceō*,
 nocēre, *nocuī*, *nocitus*
 nōn: not
 omne: all, every; singular neuter nominative or accusative from
 omnis, *omnis*, *omne*
 Oper: Oper Linn Liuān, likely 'Mouth of the pool of Liuān'
 ōstī: mouth (of the river); singular neuter genitive from *ōstium*,
 ōstī
 ōstiō: mouth (of the river); singular neuter ablative from *ōstium*,
 ōstī
 ōstium: mouth (of the river); singular neuter nominative from
 ōstium, *ōstī*
 per: through
 quā: what; singular female ablative of *qui*
 quamdiū: as long as
 quandō: when, because
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of *qui*
 recēdit: it recedes; 3rd person singular present active from
 recēdō, *recēdere*, *recessī*, *recessus*
 recipitur: it is received; 3rd person singular present from
 recipiō, *recipere*, *recēpī*, *receptus*
 recesserit: it will have withdrawn; 3rd person singular perfect
 active subjunctive from *recēdō*, *recēdere*, *recessī*, *recessus*
 regiōnis: region; singular feminine genitive from *regiō*, *regiōnis*
 replētis: having been filled; plural masculine nominative from
 repleō, *replēre*, *replēvī*, *replētus*
 retrō: behind, backwards
 rumpit: it breaks; 3rd person singular present active from
 rumpō, *rumpere*, *rūpī*, *ruptus*
 Sabrina: the River Severn, the longest river in Britain. Sabrina

is probably in the nominative case here.
 sī: if
 similiter: similarly
 sissam: rocky shore (?), this was not in any dictionary I
 consulted
 stagnō: swamp, pool; singular neuter ablative from *stagnum*,
 stagnī
 stagnū: swamp, pool; singular neuter nominative from
 stagnum, *stagnī*
 suprā: over, above, beyond, before
 sūrsum: on top, upward
 tegit: it covers; 3rd person singular present active from *tegō*,
 tegere, *tēxī*, *tēctus*
 tegitur: it is covered; 3rd person singular present passive from
 tegō, *tegere*, *tēxī*, *tēctus*
 terga: back; plural neuter accusative from *tergum*, *tergī*
 tōtiūs: of the whole; singular genitive from *tōtus*, *tōta*, *tōtūm*
 (*gen*-*ius*)
 tōtūm: whole, total; singular neuter nominative from *tōtus*, *tōta*,
 tōtūm (*gen*-*ius*)
 trahit: it draws, drags; 3rd person singular present active from
 trahō, *trahere*, *trāxī*, *tractus*
 trahuntur: they are drawn, dragged; 3rd person plural present
 passive from *trahō*, *trahere*, *trāxī*, *tractus*
 tunc: then
 ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from *ūnus* -*a* -*um*, *prīmus* -*a*
 -*um*, *singuli* -*ae* -*a*, *semel*
 unda: wave; singular feminine ablative from *unda*, *undae*
 undam: wave; singular feminine accusative from *unda*, *undae*
 vādīt: he goes; 3rd person singular present active from *vādō*,
 vādere, *vāsī*, -
 versus: verse, poetic line; singular masculine nominative perfect
 passive participle from
 vestibus: clothing; plural feminine ablative from *vestis*, *vestis*
 vim: strength; singular feminine accusative from *vīs*, *vīs*
 vorāginis: abyss, gulf, depth; singular feminine genitive from
 vorāgō, *vorāginis*

70 Est aliud mīrābile in regiōne Cinlipiūc. Est ibī fōns nōmine Finnaun Guur Helic; nōn fluit rīvus ex eō neque in eō. Vādunt hominēs piscārī ad fontem, aliī vādunt in fontem ad partem orientis et dēdūcunt piscēs ex eā parte, aliī ad dextram¹, aliī ad sinistram, ad occidentamque, et trahuntur piscēs ex eā parte. Et aliud genus piscium trahitur ex omnibus partibus. Magnum mīrābile piscēs invenīrī in fonte, dum nōn flūmen fluit in eō neque ex eō, et in eō inveniuntur quattuor genera piscium et nōn est dē magnitūdine neque dē profunditāte. Profunditās illīus usque genua, vīgintī pedēs sunt in logitūdīne et lātitūdīne, rīpās altās habet ex omnī parte.

Iuxtā flūmen, quod vocātur Guoy, pōma inveniuntur super fraxinum in prōclīvō saltus, quī est prope ōstiō flūminis.

Est aliud mīrābile in regiōne quae vocātur Guent. Est ibī fovea, ā quā ventus īflat per omne tempus sine intermissiōne, et quandō nōn flat ventus in tempore aestātis, dē illā foveā incessanter flat, ut nēmō possit sustinēre neque ante foveae profunditātem. Et vocātur nōmen eius Vith Guint Brittannīcō sermōne, Latīnē autem flātiō ventī. Magnum mīrābile est ventus dē terrā flāre.

¹*Others to the south (right), others to the north (left), and to the west. Assuming a map orientation with the East to the top, which wasn't uncommon in the Middle Ages, then *dextram* and *sinistram* fit well with *occidentam*.*

ā: from, out of, by, since	occidentamque: and east
ad: to, towards, at, according to	omne: all, every; singular neuter accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
aestātis: summer; singular feminine genitive from aestās, aestātis	omni: all, every; singular feminine ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
alii: others; plural masculine nominative from alius, alia, aliud	omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud	orientis: of the East, singular masculine genitive from oriēns, orientis
altās: high; plural feminine accusative from altus -a -um	ōstiō: mouth (of a river); singular neuter dative from ōstium, ōstiū
ante: before, in front, forwards	parte: part; singular feminine ablative from pars, partis
autem: but, however, moreover	partem: part; singular feminine accusative from pars, partis
Brittanicō: Britannic (ablative case)	partibus: parts; plural feminine ablative from pars, partis
Cinlipiuc: a region, probably in modern-day Wales	pedēs: feet; plural masculine nominative from pēs, pedis
dē: of, from, away from, down from	per: through
dēdūcunt: they lead down, escort, remove; 3rd person plural present active from dēdūcō, dēdūcerē, dēdūxi, dēdūctus	piscārī: to fish; infinitive
dextram: right hand, right side; singular feminine accusative from dexter, dextra -um, dexterior -or -us, dextimus -a -um	piscēs: fishes; plural masculine nominative from piscis, piscis
dum: while, as long as, until	piscīum: of fishes; plural masculine genitive from piscis, piscis
ea: it; singular feminine nominative or plural neuter nom. or acc. from is, ea, id	pōma: fruit; plural neuter nominative from pōmum, pōmī
eius: his/her/its	possit: he (may) be able; 3rd person singular present active subjunctive from possum, posse, potuī, -
eō: in it; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id	prōclīvō: inclined towards; singular masculine ablative from prōclīvus, prōclīva, prōclīvum
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	profunditās: depth, vastness; singular feminine nominative from profunditās, profunditātis
et: and	profunditātē: depth, vastness; singular feminine ablative from profunditās, profunditātis
ex: out of, from	profunditātēm: depth, vastness; singular feminine accusative from profunditās, profunditātis
Finnaun: Finnaun Guur Helic, a fountain or spring	prope: near, close
flāre: to breathe, to blow; present infinitive from flō, flāre, flāvī, flātūs	quā: what; singular female ablative of qui
flat: it blows; 3rd person singular present active from flō, flāre, flāvī, flātūs	quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
flātiō: blowing; singular feminine nominative from flātiō, flātiōnis	quandō: when, because
fluit: it flows; 3rd person singular present active from fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxus	quattuor: 4
flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from flūmen, flūminis	qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from flūmen, flūminis	quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
fōns: fountain; singular masculine nominative from fōns, fontis	regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
fōnte: fountain; singular masculine ablative from fōns, fontis	rīpās: banks, shores; plural feminine accusative from rīpa, rīpās
fontem: fountain; singular masculine accusative from fōns, fontis	rīvū: small stream; singular masculine nominative from rīvus, rīvī
fovea: pit, pitfall; singular feminine nominative from fovea, foveae	saltūs: narrow pass, woodland; singular masculine genitive from saltus, saltūs
foveae: pit, pitfall; singular feminine genitive from fovea, foveae	sermōne: language; singular masculine ablative from sermō, sermōnis
fraxinum: ash tree; singular feminine accusative from fraxinus, fraxinī	sine: without
genera: types; plural neuter nominative from genus, generis	sinistrā: left-hand; singular feminine accusative from sinistre, sinistra -um, sinistriōr -or -us, sinistimus -a -um
genua: knees; plural neuter accusative from genu, genūs	sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
genus: type; singular neuter nominative from genus, generis	super: above, on top of
Guent: the Kingdom of Gwent, a region in modern-day Wales	sustiōne: to stay, withstand; present infinitive from sustineō, sustinēre, sustinū, sustentus
Guint: Vith Guint, the name of a whole from which a wind blows; the name probably means 'wind-hole' in Welsh	tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus, temporis
Guoy: possibly the River Wye in Wales	tempus: time, period; singular neuter accusative from tempus, temporis
Guur: Finnaun Guur Helic, a fountain or spring	terrā: land; singular feminine ablative from terra, terrae
habet: he has; 3rd person singular present active from habeō, habere, habūi, habitus	trahitū: it is drawn; 3rd person singular present passive from trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus
Helic: Finnaun Guur Helic, a fountain or spring	trahuntur: they are drawn, dragged; 3rd person plural present passive from trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus
hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from homō, hominis	ūsque: until, all the way, up until
ibī: there, then	ut: so that
illā: that; singular feminine ablative from ille, illa, illud	vādūnt: they go; 3rd person plural present active from vādō, vādere, vāsī, -
illus: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud	venti: come; singular masculine genitive perfect passive participle from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	ventus: wind; singular masculine nominative from ventus, ventī
incessanter: incessantly	vīgīnti: 20
inflat: it blows into; 3rd person singular present active from inflō, inflāre, inflāvī, inflātūs	Vith: Vith Guint, the name of a whole from which a wind blows; the name probably means 'wind-hole' in Welsh
intermissiōne: intermission, interruption; singular feminine ablative from intermissiō, intermissiōnis	vocātū: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
invenīrī: to be found; passive infinitive from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus	
inveniuntur: they are discovered; 3rd person plural present passive from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus	
iuxtā: near, nearly	
Latīnē: in Latin	
lātītūdīne: breadth, width, latitude; singular feminine ablative from lātītūdō, lātītūdīnis	
longitūdīne: length, longitude; singular feminine ablative from longitūdō, longitūdīnis	
magnitūdīne: magnitude, greatness; singular feminine ablative from magnitūdō, magnitūdīnis	
māgnūm: large; singular neuter nominative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um	
mīrābile: marvel (this is an adjective used substantively); singular neuter nominative from mīrābilis, mīrābilis, mīrābile	
nēmō: no one; singular common nominative from nēmō, nēminis	
neque: not, not either	
nōmēn: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmēn, nōminis	
nōmīne: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmēn, nōminis	
nōn: not	

71 Est aliud mīrābile in Guyr altāre¹, quod est in locō, quī dīcitur Loyngarth, quod nūtū deī fulcītur. Historia istīus altāris melius mihi vidētur nārrāre quam reticēre. Factum est autem dum sānctus Iltūtus ōrābat in spēluncā, quae est iuxtā mare, quod alluit terram suprā dictī locī, os autem spēluncae ad mare est, et ecce nāvis nāvigābat ad sē dē marī et duo virī nāvigantēs eam et corpus sānctī hominis erat cum illīs in nāvī et altāre² suprā faciem eius, quod nūtū deī fulciēbātur et prōcessit homō deī obviam illīs et corpus sānctī hominis et altāre īsēparābiliter suprā faciem sānctī corporis stābat. Et dīxērunt ad sānctum Iltūtum: ille homō deī commendāvit nōbīs, ut dēdūcerēmus illum ad tē et sepelīrēmus eum tēcum et nōmen eius nōn revēlēs ūllō hominī, ut nōn iūrent³ per sē hominēs.

¹*There is another marvel in Guyr, an altar, which is in that place which is called Loyngarth, which is supported by the will of God.* It appears, from the next page, that the altar levitates in the air.

²*And an alter above his face.* We are told later in this sentence that it 'stands inseparably from his face', so apparently the altar levitates above the man's body, wherever the body is moved.

³*That men may not swear (oaths) by him.* The holy man wanted to prevent a cultic practice from building up around him.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*
 alluit: it flows; 3rd person singular present active from *alluō*,
 alluere, *allū*, -
 altāre: altar; singular neuter nominative from *altāre*, *altāris*
 autem: but, however, moreover
 commendāvit: he entrusted, committed, recommended; 3rd
 person singular perfect active from *commendō*,
 commendāre, *commendāvi*, *commendātus*
 corporis: body; singular neuter genitive from *corpus*, *corporis*
 corpus: body; singular neuter nominative from *corpus*, *corporis*
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dēdūcerēmus: we had lead down, escorted, removed; 1st person
 plural imperfect active subjunctive from *dēdūcō*, *dēdūcere*,
 dēdūxi, *dēdūctus*
 Dei: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from *Deus*, *Dei*
 dicitur: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from *dicō*,
 dicere, *dīxi*, *dictus*
 dictū: suprā dictū = the above-said; singular masculine genitive
 perfect passive participle from *dicō*, *dicere*, *dīxi*, *dictus*
 dīxērunt: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from *dicō*,
 dicere, *dīxi*, *dictus*
 dum: while, as long as, until
 duo: two
 eam: her; singular feminine accusative from *is*, *ea*, *id*
 ecce: Look! Behold!
 eius: his/her/its
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from *sum*,
 esse, *fūi*, *futūrus*
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fūi, *futūrus*
 et: and
 eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from *is*, *ea*, *id*
 faciem: face; singular feminine accusative from *faciēs*, *faciēi*
 factum: factum est = it happened; singular neuter nominative
 perfect passive participle from *fīō*, *fierī*, *factus*
 fulciēbātur: it was supported; 3rd person singular imperfect
 passive from *fulciō*, *fulcire*, *fūsi*, *fultus*
 fulcītur: it is supported; 3rd person singular present passive
 from *fulciō*, *fulcire*, *fūsi*, *fultus*
 Guyr: likely a location in Wales
 historia: history, story; singular feminine nominative from
 historia, *historiae*
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from *homō*,
 hominis
 hominī: man; singular masculine dative from *homō*, *hominis*
 hominis: of the man; singular masculine genitive from *homō*,
 hominis
 homō: person; singular masculine nominative from *homō*,
 hominis
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 illum: that; singular feminine accusative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 Iltūtum: Saint Illtud Farchog, a Welsh saint
 Iltūtus: Saint Illtud Farchog, a Welsh saint
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inséparābiliter: inseparably
 istiūs: of this; singular genitive from *iste*, *ista*, *istud*
 iūrent: they might swear; 3rd person plural present active
 subjunctive from *juro*, *jurare*, *juravi*, *juratus*
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 locī: place; singular masculine genitive from *locus*, *locī*
 locō: place; singular masculine dative from *locus*, *locī*
 Loyngarth: likely a location in Wales
 mare: sea; singular neuter nominative from *mare*, *maris*
 mari: sea; singular neuter ablative from *mare*, *maris*
 melius: better; comparative adverb from *bonus*
 mihi: to me;(pronoun)
 mīrābile: marvel; this is an adjective used substantially, singular
 neuter nominative from *mīrābilis*, *mīrābilis*, *mīrābile*
 nārrāre: to narrate, to tell about; present infinitive from *nārrō*,
 nārrāre, *nārrāvī*, *nārrātus*
 nāvī: boat; singular feminine ablative from *nāvis*, *nāvis*
 nāvigābat: he was sailing; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from *nāvigō*, *nāvigāre*, *nāvigāvī*, *nāvigātus*
 nāvigātēs: sailing; plural common nominative present
 participle from *nāvigō*, *nāvigāre*, *nāvigāvī*, *nāvigātus*
 nāvis: boat; singular feminine nominative from *nāvis*, *nāvis*
 nōbis: us; singular dative or ablative from *ego*
 nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative or accusative from
 nōmen, *nōminis*
 nōn: not
 nūtū: command, will, pleasure; singular masculine ablative from
 nūtus, *nūtūs*
 obviam: in the path
 ōrābat: he was praying; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from *ōrō*, *ōrāre*, *ōrāvī*, *ōrātus*
 os: bone; singular neuter nominative from *ōs*, *ōris*

Et sepeliērunt eum et post sepultūram illī duo virī reversī sunt ad nāvīm et nāvigāvērunt. At ille sānctus Iltūtus ecclēsiām fundāvit circā corpus sānctī hominis et circā altāre et manet usque in hodiernū diem altāre nūtū deī fultum. Vēnit quīdam rēgulus¹, ut proberet portāns virgam in manū suā; curvāvit eam circā altāre et tenuit ambābus manibus virgam ex utrāque parte et trāxit ad sē et sīc vēritātem illīus reī probāvit et ille posteā per mēnsem integrum² nōn vīxit. Alter vērō sub altāre aspexit et aciem³ oculōrum eius āmīsit et ante mēnsem integrum vītam finīvit.

¹*A certain prince came, carrying a stick in his hand that he might test (the levitation of the altar); he bent it (the stick) around the altar and held the stick with both hands on both parts (ends) of the stick and pulled it to himself and thus he proved the truth of this thing.*

²*And that one (the prince who tested the altar with the stick) after a whole month didn't live. The implication is that he died from perfoming the test.*

³*Another man looked under the alter and lost the sharpness of his eyes and his life finished before a full month. This other man went blind and died.*

aciēm: sharpness; singular feminine accusative from aciēs, aciēī trāxit: he drew; 3rd person singular perfect active from trahō, ad: to, towards, at, according to	trahere, trāxi, tractus
altāre: altar; singular neuter nominative from altāre, altāris	ūsque: until, all the way, up until
alter: the other; singular masculine nominative from alter, altera, alterum	ut: so that
ambabus: both; two of a pair considered together; plural feminine ablative from ambō	utrā: either; singular feminine ablative from uter, utra, utrum
āmīsit: he lost; 3rd person singular perfect active from āmittō, āmittere, āmīsi, āmissus	vēni: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, vēni, vēnus
ante: before, in front, forwards	vēritātem: truth; singular feminine accusative from vēritās, vēritātis
aspēxit: he looked at, contemplated; 3rd person singular perfect active from aspicio, aspicere, aspēxi, aspectus	vērō: truly, even so, still
at: and	virgam: stick; singular feminine accusative from virga, virgae
circā: around, about, concerning	viri: men; plural masculine nominative from virus, vīri
corpus: body, flesh; singular neuter accusative from corpus, corporis	vītam: life; singular feminine accusative from vīta, vītae
curvāvit: he bent, curved; 3rd person singular perfect active from curvō, curvāre, curvāvi, curvātus	vīxit: he lived; 3rd person singular perfect active from vīvō, vīvere, vīxi, vīctus
Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei	
diēm: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diēi	
duo: two	
eam: her; singular feminine accusative from is, ea, id	
ecclēsiām: church; singular feminine accusative from ecclēsia, ecclēsiae	
eiūs: his/her/its	
et: and	
eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id	
ex: out of, from	
finīvit: he finished; 3rd person singular perfect active from finiō, finire, finīvi, finitus	
fultum: having been supported; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from fulciō, fulcire, fulsī, fultus	
fundāvit: he founded; 3rd person singular perfect active from fundō, fundāre, fundāvī, fundātus	
hodiernum: today; singular neuter nominative from hodiernus, hodierna, hodiernum	
hominis: of a person; singular masculine genitive from homō, hominis	
ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud	
illī: those; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud	
illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud	
Iltūtus: Saint Illtud Farchog, a Welsh saint	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
integrū: whole, intact, untouched; singular neuter nominative from integer, integra -um, integrōr -or -us, integrīmus -a -um	
manet: he remains; 3rd person singular present active from maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus	
manībus: hands; plural feminine ablative from manus, manū	
manū: hand; singular feminine ablative from manus, manū	
mēnsem: month; singular masculine accusative from mēnsis, mēnsis	
nāvigāvērunt: they sailed; 3rd person plural perfect active from nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus	
nāvīm: boat; singular feminine accusative from nāvis, nāvis	
nōn: not	
nūtū: command, will, pleasure; singular masculine ablative from nūtus, nūtus	
oculōrum: eyes; plural masculine genitive from oculus, oculī	
partē: part; singular feminine ablative from pars, partis	
per: through	
portans: carrying; singular nominative present participle from portō, portare, portavi, portatus	
post: behind, after, since	
posteā: thereafter, later	
probāvit: he tested, proved; 3rd person singular perfect active from probō, probāre, probāvī, probātus	
properet: he hurries; 3rd person singular present active subjunctive from properō, properāre, properāvī, properātus	
quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis	
rēgulus: prince; singular masculine nominative from Regulus, Reguli	
rei: thing; singular feminine genitive from rēs, rei	
reversī: reversī sunt = they returned; plural masculine nominative perfect participle from revertor, revertī, reversus	
sānctī: holy	
sānctus: holy, saint	
se: himself	
sepelīvērunt: they buried; 3rd person plural perfect active from sepeliō, sepelīre, sepelīvī, sepultus	
sepultūram: burial; singular feminine accusative future participle from sepeliō, sepelīre, sepelīvī, sepultus	
sīc: thus	
sua: her/its; sing. fem. nom. or abl. or neuter nom. or acc. from suus	
sub: below, under	
tenuit: he held; 3rd person singular perfect active from teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus	

72 Est aliud mīrābile in suprā dictā regiōne Guent. Est ibī fōns iuxtā vallum puteī Mouric et lignum in mediō fontis et lavant hominēs manūs suās cum faciēbus suīs et lignum¹ sub pedibus suīs habent, quandō lavant. Nam et egō probāvī et vīdī. Quando mare inundātur, ad mallīnam² extenditur Sabrīna super omnem maritimam et tegit et usque ad fontem prōdūcitur et implētur fōns dē sissā Sabrīnae et trahit lignum sēcum usque ad mare magnum et per spatiū trium diērum in mare invertitur et in quārtō diē in suprā dictō fonte invenītur. Factum est autem, ut ūnus dē rūsticīs sepelīret eum in terrā ad probandum, et in quārtō diē inventus est in fonte et ille rūsticus, quī eum abscondit et sepelīvit, dēfūnctus est ante finem mēnsis.

¹And they have the wood under their feet, when they wash. This wood moves around magically, as described in the following sentences, so it appears that when you get in the pool, the wood moves to be beneath your feet.

²When it (the fountain) is flooded by the sea, and to the wetlands the River Severn is extended over all the shore and (the water) covers (the well) and it (the water) is lead up to the fountain and the fountain is filled with the silt of the River Severn and it (the water) draws the wood with it out to the large sea, and for the space of three days it (the wood) is turned about in the sea and on the fourth day it is found (again) in the above-said fountain. The flooding is probably the tidal floods that occur in the River Severn. Note that *mallīnam* and *sissā* are not standard Latin words, so I have glossed them with a meaning that is based on the context.

abscondit: he hid; 3rd person singular present active from
 abscondō, abscondere, abscondi, absconditus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 ante: before, in front, forwards
 autem: but, however, moreover
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dēfūctus: dēfūctus est = he died; singular masculine
 nominative perfect participle from dēfungor, dēfungi,
 dēfūctus
 dictā: suprā dictā = the above-said; singular feminine ablative
 perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
 dictō: suprā dictō = the above-said; singular masculine ablative
 perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēi
 diērum: days; plural common genitive from diēs, diēi
 egō: I
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 extenditur: it is extended; 3rd person singular passive present
 from extendō, extendere, extendi, extensus
 faciēbus: faces; plural feminine ablative from faciēs, faciēi
 factum: factum est = it happened; singular neuter nominative
 perfect passive participle from fio, fieri, factus
 finem: boundary, end, limit; singular common accusative from
 finis, finis
 fōns: fountain; singular masculine nominative from fōns, fontis
 fonte: fountain; singular masculine ablative from fōns, fontis
 fontem: fountain; singular masculine accusative from fōns,
 fontis
 fontis: fountain; singular masculine genitive from fōns, fontis
 Guent: the Kingdom of Gwent, a region in modern-day Wales
 habent: they have; 3rd person plural present active from habeō,
 habēre, habui, habitus
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from homō,
 hominis
 ibi: there, then
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 implētur: it is filled up; 3rd person singular present passive
 from impleō, implēre, implēvi, implētus
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inundatur: it is flooded; 3rd person singular present passive
 from inundō, inundāre, inundāvi, inundātus
 inveniūt: it is found; 3rd person singular present passive from
 invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 inventus: inventus est = it was found; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from
 invertitur: it is turned upside down; 3rd person singular present
 passive from invertō, invertere, inverti, inversus
 iuxta: near, nearly
 lavant: they wash; 3rd person plural present active from lavō,
 lavāre, lavī, laetus
 lignum: wood; singular neuter nominative from lignum, lignī
 māgnum: large; singular neuter nominative from māgnus,
 māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mallinam: wetlands (?), this is not a standard Latin word
 manūs: hand; plural feminine accusative from manus, manūs
 mare: sea; singular neuter nominative from mare, maris
 maritimam: maritime, things relating to the sea; singular
 feminine accusative from maritimus, maritima, maritimum
 mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from medius, media,
 medium
 mēnsis: month; singular masculine genitive from mēnsis, mēnsis
 mīrābile: marvel; singular neuter nominative from mīrābilis,
 mīrābilis, mīrābile
 Mouric: of Mouric. To whom this name refers is unknown
 nam: yes, truly
 omnem: all, every; singular common accusative from omnis,
 omnis, omne
 pedibus: feet; plural masculine ablative from pēs, pedis
 per: through
 probandum: testing; singular neuter nominative gerund from
 probō, probāre, probāvi, probātus
 probāvī: I approved, commended; 1st person singular perfect
 active from probō, probāre, probāvi, probātus
 prōdūcitur: it is lead forward; 3rd person singular present
 passive from prōducō, prōducere, prōduxī, productus
 puteī: of the well; singular masculine genitive from puteus,
 putei
 quandō: when, because
 quartō: fourth; singular masculine ablative from quattuor,
 quartus -a -um, quaterni -ae -a, -
 qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 régione: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 rūsticus: rural persons, locals, ; plural ablative from rūsticus,
 rūstica, rusticum

73 Est aliud mīrāculum in rēgiōn quae vocātur Ercing. Habētur ibī sepulchrum iuxtā fontem, quī cognōminātur Licat Anir, et virī nōmen, quī sepultus est in tumulō, sīc vocābātur Anir: filius Arthūrī mīlitis erat et ipse¹ occīdit eum ibīdem et sepelīvit. Et veniunt hominēs ad mēnsūrandum tumulum in longitūdine aliquandō sex pedēs, aliquandō novem, aliquandō duodecim, aliquandō quindecim. In quā mēnsūrā mētiēris eum in istā vice, iterum nōn inveniēs eum in ūnā mēnsūrā, et ego sōlus² probāvī.

¹*He was the son of the soldier Arthur and he himself killed him in the same place and buried him.* Presumably, this means that Arthur killed his son Anir and buried him (Anir) in the tomb.

²*And I myself tested (it).* *Sōlus* means 'alone' or 'solitary', but 'myself' appears to be the meaning that the author was going for here.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
aliquandō: some day
aliūd: other; singular neuter nominative from *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*
Anir: Licat Anir, the name of a fountain
Arthurī: of Arthur
cognominatur: is named; 3rd person singular present passive
 from *cognomino*, *cognominare*, *cognominavi*, *cognominatus*
duodecim: twelve
ego: I; (pronoun)
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from *sum*,
 esse, *fui*, *futūrus*
Ercing: a region
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fui, *futūrus*
et: and
eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from *is*, *ea*, *id*
filius: son; singular masculine nominative from *filius*, *fili*
fontem: fountain; singular masculine accusative from *fōns*,
 fontis
habētur: it is had; 3rd person singular present passive from
 habeō, *habēre*, *habuī*, *habitus*
hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from *homō*,
 hominis
ibī: there, then
ibidem: in the same place
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
inveniēs: you will find; 2nd person singular future active from
 invenio, *invenire*, *inveni*, *inventus*
ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from *ipse*, *ipsa*,
 ipsum
istā: that; singular feminine ablative from *iste*, *ista*, *istud*
iterum: again
iuxtā: near, nearly
Licat: Licat Anir, the name of a fountain
longitūdine: length, longitude; singular feminine ablative from
 longitūdō, *longitūdīnīs*
mēnsūra: measure; singular feminine nominative future
 participle from *metiō*, *metiri*, *mensum*
mēnsurandum: measuring; singular neuter nominative gerund
 from *mēnsūrō*, *mēnsūrāre*, *mēnsūrāvī*, *mēnsūrātus*
mētiēris: you will measure; infinitive
militis: of a soldier; singular masculine genitive from *mīles*,
 mīlitis
mīrāculum: miracle; singular neuter nominative from
 mīrāculum, *mīrāculi*
nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from *nōmen*, *nōminis*
nōn: not
novem: nine; from *novem*, *nonus* -a -um, *noveni* -ae -a, *novie* (n)s
occidit: he killed; 3rd person singular perfect from *occidō*,
 occidere, *occidī*, *occisus*
pedēs: feet; plural masculine accusative from *pēs*, *pedis*
probāvī: I tested; 1st person singular perfect active from *probō*,
 probāre, *probāvī*, *probātus*
quā: what; singular female ablative of *qui*
quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of *quis*
quī: who; plural masculine nominative of *quis*
quīndecim: fifteen; from *quīndecim*, *quīndecimus* -a -um,
 quīndeci -ae -a, *quīndecie* (n)s
sepelīvit: he buried; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 sepeliō, *sepelīre*, *sepelīvī*, *sepultus*
sepulchrūm: grave; singular neuter nominative from
 sepulchrūm, *sepulchrī*
sepultus: sepultus est = he was buried; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from *sepeliō*, *sepelīre*,
 sepelīvī, *sepultus*
sex: six
sīc: thus
sōlus: alone; singular masculine nominative from *sōlus*, *sōla*,
 sōlum (gen. -iūs)
tumulō: mound, hill; singular masculine ablative from *tumulus*,
 tumulī
tumulum: mound, hill; singular masculine accusative from
 tumulus, *tumulī*
ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from *ūnus* -a -um, *prīmus* -a
 -um, *singulī* -ae -a, *semel*
veniūnt: they come; 3rd person plural present active from *veniō*,
 venīre, *vēnī*, *ventus*
vice: time, turn; singular feminine ablative from *vicis*, *vicis*
virī: of the man; singular neuter genitive from *virus*, *viri*
vocābātūr: it was being called; 3rd person singular imperfect
 passive from *vocō*, *vocāre*, *vocāvī*, *vocātus*
vocātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, *vocāre*, *vocāvī*, *vocātus*

74 Est aliud mīrābile in regiōne quae vocātur Cereticiaun. Est ibī mōns, quae cognōminātur Cruc Maur, et est sepulchrum in cacūmine illīus et omnis homō quīcumque¹ vēnerit ad sepulchrum et extenderit sē iuxtā illud, quamvīs brevis fuerit, in ūnā longitūdine invenītur sepulchrum et homō, et sī fuerit homō brevis et parvus, similiter et longitūdinem sepulchrī iuxtā statūram hominis invenītur. Et sī fuerit longus atque prōcērus, etiam sī fuisset in longitūdine quattuor cubitōrum, iuxtā statūram ūniuscuiusque hominī sīc tumulus reperītur. Et omni² peregrīnus taediōsusque homō trēs flectiōnēs flectāverit iuxtā illud, nōn erit super sē usque ad diem mortis suaē et nōn gravābitur iterum ūllō taediō quam abīsset sōlus in extrēmī finibus cosmi.

¹And every man whosoever will come to the grave and lay (extend) himself next to it, however short he be, in one length will be found the grave and the man (they are the same length) and if the man will be short and small, similarly the length of the grave is found to be close to the stature of the man. This is similar to the grave in the previous account, except this grave changes to match the size of whomever is measuring it.

²And to every pilgrim and tired man who bows three times next to it, (the tiredness) will not be upon him until the day of his death and (the man) will not be weighed down again by any tiredness even (to the extent that) as if he went out alone to the ends of the universe.

ab̄isset: he went off; be changed; 3rd person singular pluperfect	sepulchrum: grave; singular neuter nominative or accusative from sepulchrum, sepulchri
active subjunctive from abeo, abire, abi, abitus	
ad: to, towards, at, according to	sī: if
aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud	sīc: thus
atque: and	similiter: similarly
brevis: short; singular common nominative from brevis, breve,	sōlus: alone; singular masculine nominative from sōlus, sōla,
brevior -or -us, brevissimus -a -um	sōlum (gen -ius)
cacūmine: peak, extremity; singular neuter ablative from	statūram: stature; singular feminine accusative future participle
cacūmen, cacūminis	from stō, stāre, stetī, status
Cereticiaūn: the name of a region	suae: her; singular feminine gen. or dat. or pluraul feminine
cognominatur: it is named; 3rd person singular present passive	nom. or voc. from suus
from cognomino, cognominare, cognominavi, cognominatus	super: above, on top of
cosmī: universe; singular masculine genitive from cosmos,	taediō: weariness, tedium; singular neuter ablative from
cosmī	taedium, taedi
Cruc: Cruc Maur, the name of a mountain	taediōsus: tedious, wearisome; singular masculine nominative
cubitōrum: of cubits; plural neuter genitive from cubitus, cubitī	from taedium, taedi(i)
diem: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diēi	trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius
erit: he will be; 3rd person singular future active from sum,	-a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
esse, fuī, futūrus	tumulus: mound, hill; singular masculine nominative from
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,	tumulus, tumuli
fuī, futūrus	ūllō: any; singular masculine ablative from ūllus, ūlla, ūllum
et: and	(gen -ius)
etiam: still	ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a
extenderit: he will have extended; 3rd person singular perfect	-um, singuli -ae -a, semel
active subjunctive from extendō, extendere, extendī,	ūniusculiusque: of each one; genitive from ūnusquisque
extensus	ūsque: until, all the way, up until
extrēmīs: limits, outsides, ends; plural masculine ablative from	vēnerit: he will have come; 3rd person singular perfect active
extremus, extremi	subjunctive from veniō, venire, vēni, ventus
finibus: boundaries, ends, limits; plural common ablative from	vocātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
finis, finis	vocō, vocāre, vocātūs
flectaverit: he will bow	
flectiōnēs: bows;	
fuerit: he will have been; 3rd person singular perfect active	
subjunctive from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	
fuiſſet: he (might) have had been; 3rd person singular	
pluperfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	
gravabītur: he will be burdened; 3rd person singular future	
passive from gravō, gravāre, gravāvī, gravātūs	
homīni: person, man; singular masculine dative from homō,	
hominis	
hominīs: of a person; singular masculine genitive from homō,	
hominis	
homō: person; singular masculine nominative from homō,	
hominis	
ibī: there, then	
illīus: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud	
illud: that; singular neuter nominative or accusative from ille,	
illa, illud	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
invenītur: it is found; 3rd person singular present passive from	
invenīo, invenīre, invenītūs	
iterum: again	
iuxtā: near, nearly	
longitūdīne: length, longitude; singular feminine ablative from	
longitūdō, longitūdīnis	
longitūdīnem: length, longitude; singular feminine accusative	
from longitūdō, longitūdīnis	
longus: long, far; singular masculine nominative from longus,	
longa -um, longiōr -or -us, longissimus -a -um	
Maur: Cruc Maur, the name of a mountain	
mīrābile: marvel; singular neuter nominative from mīrābilis,	
mīrābilis, mīrābile	
mōns: mountain; singular masculine nominative from mōns,	
montis	
mortis: death; singular feminine genitive from mors, mortis	
nōn: not	
omnī: all, every; plural masculine nominative from omnis,	
omnis, omne	
omnis: all, every; singular common nominative from omnis,	
omnis, omne	
parvus: small; singular masculine nominative from parvus,	
parva -um, minor -or -us, minimus -a -um	
peregrīnus: traveler; singular masculine nominative from	
peregrīnus, peregrīna, peregrīnum	
prōcērūs: elongated, long; singular masculine nominative from	
prōcērūs, prōcēra -um, prōcērīor -or -us, prōcērīssimus -a	
-um	
quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis	
quam: even, to the extent that (adverb)	
quamvis: as much, as much as one wants, however	
quattuor: 4	
qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis	
quīcumque: whosoever	
regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis	
reperītūr: it is discovered, found; 3rd person singular present	
passive from reperīo, reperīre, reperi, repertus	
se: himself	
sepulchri: of the grave; singular neuter genitive from	
sepulchrum, sepulchri	

75 Prīnum mīrāculum¹ est lītus sine marī.

Secundum mīrāculum est ibī mōns quī gyrātur tribus vicibus in annō.

Tertium mīrāculum vadum² est ibī: quandō inundātur mare et ipse inundātur, et quandō dēcrēscit mare et ipse minuitur.

Quartum mīrāculum est lapis quī ambulat³ in nocturnīs temporibus super vallem Citheinn, et prōiectus est ōlim in vorāgine Cereuus, quī est in mediō pelagī quod vocātur Mēne, et in crāstinō super rīpam suprā dictae vallis inventus est sine dubiō.

¹Here begins another list of marvels, giving the feel that the author compiled together two already-existing lists of marvels. *Nennius Interpretātus* titles these as marvels from the Isle of Man.

²*The third miracle is a shallows (or a ford) there: when the sea is flooded it itself is flooded, and when the sea decreases it itself is diminished.* Presumably this shallows doesn't appear connected to the sea, making the synchronicity appear marvelous.

³It's possible that the rock is moved around by strong tides. There may also be an allusion here to the idea that a rock followed the Israelites around in the wilderness, giving them water. This idea is alluded to by Paul in 1 Corinthians 10:4 καὶ πάντες τὸ αὐτὸ πνευματικὸν ἔπιον πόμα· ἔπινον γὰρ ἐκ πνευματικῆς ἀκολουθούσης πέτρας, ἡ πέτρα δὲ ἦν ὁ Χριστός (*and all drank the same spiritual drink: for they drank of the spiritual rock following (them), and the rock was Christ*).

ambulat: he walks; 3rd person singular present active from
ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvi, ambulātus
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
Cereus: the name of a whirlpool
Citheinn: the name of a valley
crāstīnō: tomorrow; singular masculine ablative from crāstīnus,
crāstīna, crāstīnum
dēcrēscit: it decreased; 3rd person singular present active from
dēcrēscō, dēcrēscere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus
dictae: suprā dictae = the above-said; singular feminine genitive
perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
dubīō: doubt; singular masculine ablative from dubius, dubia,
dubium
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
fuī, futūrus
et: and
gyrātūr: it is encircled; 3rd person singular present passive
from gyrō, gyrāre, gyrāvī, gyrātus
ibī: there, then
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
inundātūr: it is flooded; 3rd person singular present passive
from inundō, inundāre, inundāvī, inundātus
inventus: inventus est = it was found; singular masculine
nominative perfect passive participle from inveniō,
invenīre, invēnī, inventus
ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
ipsum
lapis: stone; singular masculine nominative from lapis, lapis
litus: beach, shore; singular neuter nominative or accusative
from litus, litoris
mare: sea; singular neuter nominative or accusative from mare,
maris
marī: sea; singular neuter ablative from mare, maris
mē: to me, accusative from ego
mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from medius, media,
medium
minuitur: it is diminished; 3rd person singular present passive
from minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus
mīrāculūm: marvel; singular neuter nominative from mīrāculum,
mīrāculī
mōns: mountain; singular masculine nominative from mōns,
montis
nocturnīs: nocturnal; plural ablative from nocturnus, nocturna,
nocturnum
ōlim: one day, once upon a time
pelagī: of the sea; singular neuter genitive from pelagus, pelagī
prīmū: first; singular neuter nominative from primus, prima,
prīmū
prōiectus: prōiectus est = it was thrown down; 3rd person
singular perfect from prōiciō, prōicere, prōiēci, prōiectus
quandō: when, because
quārtūm: for the fourth time
qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
ripam: bank, shore; singular feminine accusative from rīpa,
rīpae
secundūm: second
sine: without
super: above, on top of
suprā: above
temporibus: of times, of periods; plural neuter ablative from
tempus, temporis
tertium: third; singular neuter nominative from trēs -es -ia,
tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um,
terni -ae -a, ter
vadūm: shallows; singular neuter nominative from vadum, vadī
vallem: valley; singular feminine accusative from valles, vallis
vallis: valley; singular feminine genitive from vallis, vallis
vicibus: times; plural feminine ablative from vicis, vicis
vocātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
vorāgīne: whirlpool; singular feminine ablative from vorāgō,
vorāginis

76 Est ibī stāgnū quod vocātur Luchlein, quattuor circulīs ambītur. Prīmō circulō gronna¹ stannī ambītur, secundō circulō gronna plumbī ambītur, tertioō circulō gronna ferrī ambītur, quārtō circulō gronna āeris ambītur, et in eō stāgnō multae margarītae inveniuntur, quās pōnunt rēgēs in auribus suīs.

Est aliud stāgnū quī facit ligna dūrēscere in lapidēs. Hominēs autem fingunt ligna et postquam fōrmāverint, prōiciunt in stāgnō, et manet in eō usque ad caput annī et in capite annī lapis reperiētur: et vocātur Luch Echach.

¹*Gronna* is not a Latin word. By context it appears to mean a ring, wall, ridges, or ditches.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 āeris: copper; singular neuter genitive from aes, aeris
 aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 ambītūr: it is incircled; 3rd person singular present passive
 from ambiō, ambīre, ambītus
 anni: year; singular masculine genitive from annus, anni
 auribūs: ears; plural feminine ablative from auris, auris
 autem: but, however, moreover
 capite: the head of the year; singular neuter ablative from
 caput, capitīs
 caput: head; singular neuter nominative from caput, capitīs
 circulīs: circle, ring; plural masculine ablative from circulus,
 circulī
 circulō: circle, ring; singular masculine ablative from circulus,
 circulī
 dūrēscere: to become hard
 Echach: Luch Echach, the lake that turns wood into stone
 eō: in it; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 facit: he makes; 3rd person singular present active from faciō,
 facere, fēci, factus
 ferri: of iron; singular masculine genitive from ferrum, ferrī
 fingunt: they mold, form, create; 3rd person plural present
 active from fingō, fingere, finxi, factus
 fōrmāverint: they will have formed; 3rd person plural perfect
 active subjunctive from fōrmō, fōrmāre, fōrmāvi, fōrmātus
 gronna: ridges (?), circles (?). This is not a Latin word.
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from homō,
 hominis
 ibī: there, then
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inveniuntur: they are discovered; 3rd person plural present
 passive from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 lapidēs: stones; plural masculine accusative from lapis, lapidis
 lapis: stone; singular masculine nominative from lapis, lapidis
 ligna: wood; plural neuter accusative from lignum, lignī
 Luch: Luch Echach, the lake that turns wood into stone
 Luchlein: the name of the lake
 manet: he remains; 3rd person singular present active from
 maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 margarītae: pearl; plural feminine nominative from margarīta,
 margarītae
 multae: many; singular feminine genitive from multus, multa
 -um, -a, plūrimus -a -um
 plumbī: of lead; singular neuter genitive from plumbum, plumbī
 pōnunt: they place; 3rd person plural present from pōnō,
 pōnere, posuī, positus
 postquam: since, since then, after
 primō: first; singular masculine ablative from pīmus, pīma,
 pīnum
 prōiciunt: they throw down; 3rd person plural present active
 from proicio, proicere, projeci, projectus
 quartō: fourth; singular masculine ablative from quattuor,
 quartus -a -um, quaterni -ae -a, -
 quās: who; plural female accusative of quis
 quattuor: 4
 qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 reperiētur: will be discovered, found out; 3rd person singular
 future passive from reperiō, reperire, reperi, repertus
 secundō: second
 stagnō: swamp, pool; singular neuter ablative from stagnum,
 stagnī
 stagnum: swamp, pool; singular neuter nominative from
 stagnum, stagnī
 stannī: tin, or an alloy of silver and lead; singular neuter
 genitive from stannum, stannī
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 tertīo: third; singular masculine ablative from trēs -es -ia,
 tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vocātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

Bibliography

“Historia Brittonum.” *Chronica Minora Saec. IV. V. VI. VII.*, edited by Theodor Mommsen, vol. 3, Weidmann, 1898, pp. 111–219, <https://archive.org/details/chronicaminorasa13momm/page/n13/mode/2up>

Nearing, Homer. “The Legend of Julius Caesar’s British Conquest.” *PMLA* 64, no. 4 (1949): 889–929. <https://doi.org/10.2307/459639>.

Thomas, Rebecca. *History and Identity in Early Medieval Wales*. Boydell & Brewer, 2022. <https://doi.org/10.2307/j.ctv24cns98>

“Unpublished Geraldine Documents: The Whyte Knight.” *The Journal of the Royal Historical and Archaeological Association of Ireland*, vol. 5, no. 50, 1882, pp. 640–730. <https://www.jstor.org/stable/25506830>.

